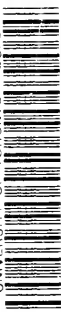
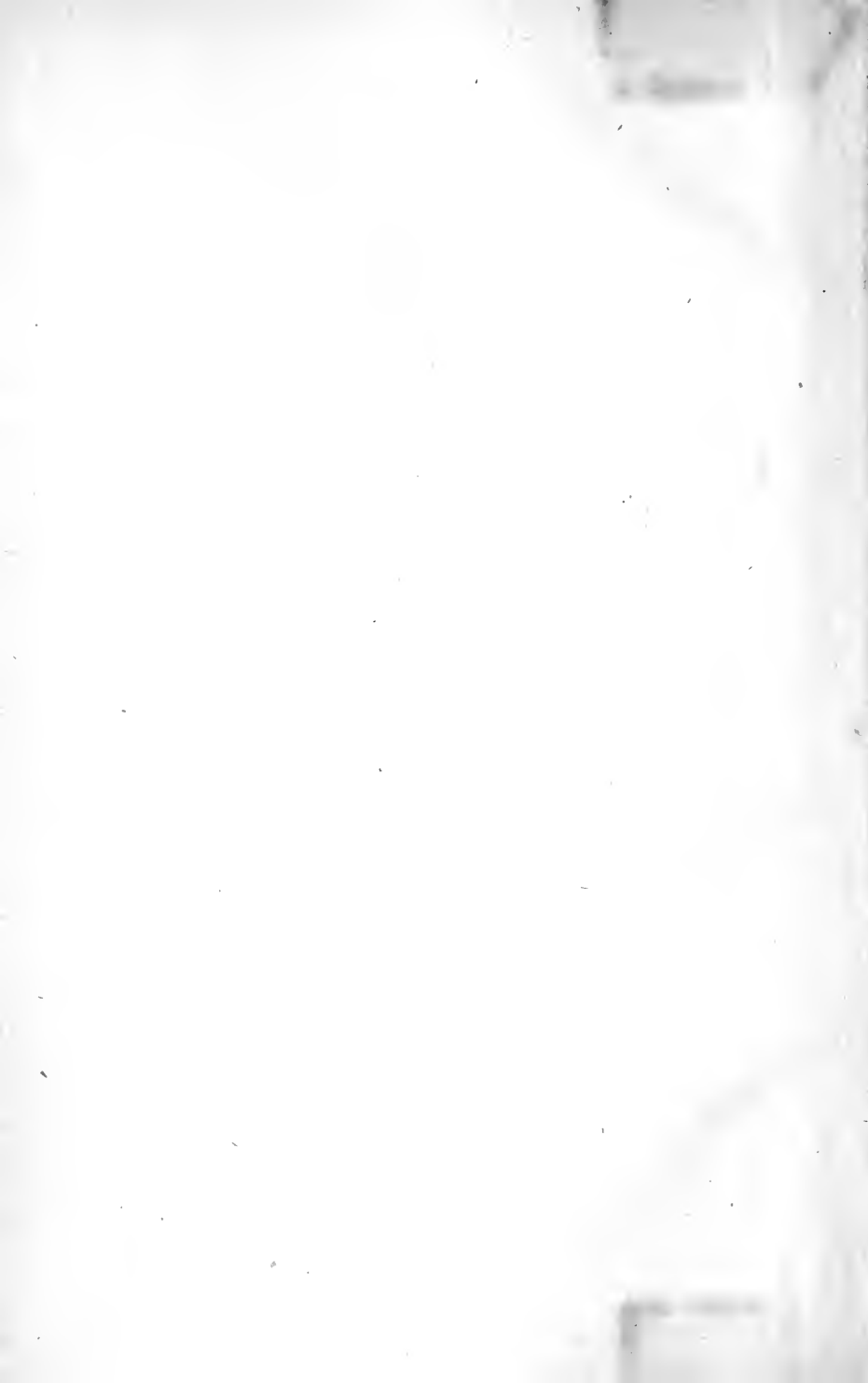


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL



3 1761 00361171 2



Charles the Great.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxvii.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Early English Text Society
[Publications.] Extra Series

THE No. 36237

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. — IV

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CAXTON
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.



EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

.BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR FERUMBRAS," ETC.

38074
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXI.

PR

1119

E5

no. 36-37

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyn*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrd, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring 2½ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of *Fierabras*, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.¹ One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qaltre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de novembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par maistre Guillaume le roy. Le cincquiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

¹ Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing *Fierabras* on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzeperes. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist *Fierabras*. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxij. et Le xij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this *Lyf of Charles the Grete* at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeney, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and souerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeney,

¹ See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewelhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaureur of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaureur of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liurey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^d. ob. [*leaf 49 back*]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl^s.: his Liurey is as Knightes, and if he be sicke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sicke, &c. Also in this offise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chances and all other part, or eighteene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewelhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sicke, he taketh such Liurey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liurey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liuries [*leaf 50*]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candles paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth therupon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodgeing in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shooeing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [leaf 50, back] The Accompt of housold. And as for othir thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus*¹ Regis capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges liuerey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

The maister
two seruants,
the Clerke
one seruant.

A Charriot
with seauen
horses.

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.² The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

¹ Vide de hoc antea : folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

² The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period :—

[*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.
VII., William Dawbeney late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naves et batellas extra regnum Anglie transeuntes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portubus et locis predictis [*i. e.* in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt ; vel si aliquae persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibiciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predictae."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.¹

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Dawbeney*, and Master *Robert Rydon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

ib. p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

¹ Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI, ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500.

said *William Daubeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,¹ 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, arl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardyner, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardyner late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the juelx with the foresaid pretended king* . . . and also the summe of c. ti. parcell of xxiiij^o. ti by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said citie of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij^o. ti. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche juelx, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldremen; on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of juelx of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere."²

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Daubeney*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemound, a coler of gold of xx^{ti} oz., xxx^{ti} ti.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].³ John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

¹ 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

² *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII.*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

³ *Stowe's Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilzear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,
Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

- ¹ **S** Aynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al
thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton
to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the
4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerceley. Thenne
sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and
corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles
the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce
8 engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the
werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue
to vs ensauple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions
digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and
12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hie
hystories the comune vnderstandyng is better content
to the ymagnacion local than to symple auctoryte to
which it is submysed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes
16 I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry
bolomyer, chanonne of lausanne, for to reduce for his
playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce
as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght
20 puyssaunt, vertuous, and noble charles the grete, kyng
of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete
Pepyn: And of his prynces & barons, As Rolland,
Olyuer, and other, touchyng² somme werkes haultayne
24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght
ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul
says, "all scrip-
tures are written
for our learning,"

and the lives of
the ancients give
us an example
how to live,

I have, at the per-
suasion of the
venerable Canon
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this
history of
Charlemagne and
his douzeperes

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

to the best of my
ability, chiefly

from the *Specu-
lum Historiale*.

As I have before
printed the Lives
of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of
Boulogne,

I now print this
that all may be
able to read it in
our mother-
tongue.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-
creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue
wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen
of thys mater and the hystories dysioyned wythoute 4
ordre, therefore at his request, after the capacyte of my
lytel entendement, And after thystories and mater that
I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.
And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more 8
largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For
I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben
enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrroure
hystorial, as by the canones and somme other bookes 12
whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And
by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable founde-
ment I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce.
For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of 16
the frenssh men and for prouffyte of euery man, and
after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be
founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche
the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute 20
grete ate[n]dacyon, by ¹the playsyr of god, to whome I
submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought
to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion
of euery persone.

24

THenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-
prynte the book of the noble & victoryous kyng
Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten
kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the 28
noble hystorie & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of
Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme persones
of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce
thystorie and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce 32
Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce² & emperor of Rome,
the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystories,
actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke
as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

¹ A ij, back.

² *Ed.* frauce.

- quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe
 here in this noble royaume of englond. And for to
 satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good^{er} synguler
 4 lordes & specyal maysters and^{er} frendes I haue enprysed^{er}
 and^{er} concluded in my self to reduce this sayd^{er} book in to
 our englysshe, as all alonge and^{er} playnely ye may rede,
 here, and^{er} see in thys book ¹here folowyng, besechyng
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and^{er}
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple
 reducyng^{er}. and^{er} though so be there be no gaye termes,
 ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue specyally
 reduced^{er} it after the symple connyng^{er} that god hath lente
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and^{er}
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng^{er} I
 hope truly. And^{er} that I may so do & contynue I byseche
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and^{er} so to laboure and^{er}
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.
- 24 ¶ ²Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this
 book folowyng^{er} nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly
 the mater therin comprised.
- ¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth
 28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v
 chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng^{er} of fraunce and^{er}
 of kyng^{er} Cloys.
- 32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynyns vnto kyng^{er} cloys
 the first crysten kyng^{er}: capitulo primo
 How kyng^{er} cloys beyng a paynym had^{er} to wyf
 clotildis doughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-
 lously: capitulo ij

And I ask all my
readers to pardon
any imperfections
in the work,

which I have done
after my simple
learning,

for which I bless
my father and
mother, who sent
me to school.

The contents of
this book.

Of book I.

Pt I contains v
chapters.

Of the first kings
of France.

Of King Cloys.

¹ col. 2.

² A iij.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wife,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ca.	iiij
	How kyng Clois was vycetorious on his enemyes by- cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ca.	iiij
and of his baptism.	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo.	v.
Pt II contains v chapters.	¶ The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrst of kyng ¹ pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone.	12
Of King Pepin.	How Pepyn by hys prudence ¹ was chosen kyng of frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession : capitulo	primo
How Charles was made Emperour of Rome.	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytucyons wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ca.	ij
Of his figure,	Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng : capitulo	iiij 20
children,	To whome the kyng ¹ Charles & his chyldren sones & doughters were dedyed : capitulo	iiij
and pursuits.	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng ¹ and charytable werkes, and other maters : ca.	v 24
Pt III contains iii chapters.	¶ The thyrde partye of the fyrst book conteyneth iiij chapytres, & telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.	28
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	How the patryarcke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste oute by the turkes : capitulo	primo
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca.	ij
and brought home the holy relics.	Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon : [ca.]	iiij

¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth Book II contain-
ing iii parts.
thre partyes by chapytres ensyewyng declared.

¶ The first partye of the second ¹book conteyneth Pt I contains xvj
chapters.
4 xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene
Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt.

¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles
ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynims, after a lytel of
8 the prologe : ca. primo

Of fyerabras how he came to exerceyte charles : Of Fierabras
[Ferumbras].
capitulo ij

How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour
12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo iij

The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly : Dispute between
ca. iiij

How kyng charles & Rolland ben re pryse d by Charles and Ro-
land.
16 thauctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor-
sayd : capitulo v

How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras How Oliver,
against the wish
of his father,
undertook to fight
with Fierabras.
notwythstondyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj

20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he
shold not fyzt with the geaunt, but for al that he went
forth : capitulo vij

How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no
24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions. viij

How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras
to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how
Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix

28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the Of the fight,
prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x

How Olyuer made hys prayer ²to god whan he felte
hym hurte : Capitulo xj

32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & and of the bottles
of holy balm.
dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was
slayn : capitulo xij

How fyerabras & olyuer fouzt togyder on fote mer-

¹ A iij, bk.

² col. 2.

unayllously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer :
capitulo xiiij

How Oliver over-
came Fierabras,

How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed
by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes 4
of Fyerabras. [ca.] xiiij

How Fyerabras beyng^t vaynquysshed byleued^d in god^d,
and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was
assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca. xv 8

but was himself
taken by the
Saracens.

How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld^d pye-
tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe
men : capitulo xvj

Pt II contains
xvij chapters.

¶ The second^d partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij 12
chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of
fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to
speke to ballant thadmyral.

¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16
baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca. j

How Oliver was
thrown into
prison,

How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant
thadmyral and cruelly passyoned^d by pryson : capitulo ij

Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged 20
and how they were vysyted^d by fayr Florypes, ¹doughter
of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo² iij

and after released
by Floripas.

How the frensshe men were had^d oute of pryson and
vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24
chambre : capitulo iiij

Of the messengers
sent by Charles
and Balan.

How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij
peres of fraunce, whyche wold^d not gladly haue goon
thyder : capitulo v 28

How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles
to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted^d by
the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vj

Of the Bridge of
Mantrible.

Of the meruayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32
tribute that must be there payed^d for the passage, & how
with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed^d ouer. [ca.] vij

How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and
what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

¹ A iiii.

² Ed. tapitulo.

- How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were sauēd & lodged to-gyder & knowen by her, & resonned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other
 4 maters : capitulo ix How Floripas saved the French knights.
- How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entred in to the chambre & after was slayne by duc naymes in blowyng^t of the cole : capitulo x Of the death of Lucifer,
- 8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, & how by enchaument a gyrdel was taken¹ fro his doughter : capitulo xj and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,
- 12 How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hunge, & how the goddes were by them confounded : ca. xij which was besieged by Balan.
- How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, & 16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle : capitulo xiiij
- How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral, 20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters : capitulo xiiij Of the capture of Guy,
- How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyne, seyng^t the crysten men, whyche socoured 24 hym puyssantly. [ca.] xv and his rescue.
- How the peres of fraunce tofore sayd were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fouzt with the paynymys xvj
- 28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl down by enchaument, & how the frenssh men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the paynymys : capitulo xvij Of the burning of the tower by Balan.
- 32 Here begynneth the thyrde parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvj chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce² made to them socours, and the paynems confused & destroyed. Pt III contains xvj chapters.

Of the mocyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. frauce.

How the French
determined to
send Richard to
Charles for help.

and shewe ¹theyr affayres vnto kyng Charles, & how
rychard of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym:
capitulo primo

Of the death of
Clarion.

How after that Rychard was departed the kyng 4
claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the
whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valyauntly, &
other maters: capitulo ij

How the hors of rychard cam & retorned through 8
thexcersyte of thadmyral & was seen & knowen of the
peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had
ben deed, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept:
ca. ij 12

How Richard
passed the river
Flagot,

How rychard of Normandye passed the ryuer of
flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte:
capitulo iiij

How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorned 16
wythoute goyng ony ferther, by the counceyl of the
traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v

and reached
Charles.

How after the complaynte of Charles rychard of
normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete 20
necessytes of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they
were in: capitulo vj

How the French
army passed the
bridge of Man-
trible.

How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Nor-
mandye with iiij other barons the stronge brydge of 24
mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what
manere man was galafre: ca. vij

How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred
into mantryble after that Galafre was deek, not-with- 28
standyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym,
& many other maters. [ca.] viij

Of Amyot
the giantess.

How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe
dyl gretely hyr deuoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32
hyr ij sones were baptysed, & of ballant thadmyral
whan he knewe the tydynges: ca. ix

How the peres of fraunce were assayed more

¹ A iiij, bk.

² col. 2.

strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :

Of the fortunes
of the knights
besieged by
Balan,

4 capitulo x

How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-
lon bare hym meruayllously whan he was sent forth

and how they saw
Charles coming
to their aid.

8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.] xj

How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,

12 & other maters : ca. xij

How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after-
ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the

How Reyner slew
Sortibrant.

16 frensshe men : capitulo xij

How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam
oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad-
myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca. xiiij

Of the capture of
Balan,

20 'How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that
was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &

and his death,
and of the baptism
and marriage of
Floripas.

24 she quene of that contre : capitulo xv

How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvj

28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth
ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.

Book III contains
ij parts.

¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two

Pt I contains xiiij
chapters.

32 grete geantes.

How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by
the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo

How at the bid-
ding of St James
Charles invaded
Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme
of theym were by hym cursed: capitulo ij

Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght
not be beten down, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4
therof: capitulo iij

and of the church
which he built to
the saint.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other
chyrcches that he dyd there do founde: [ca.] iij

How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8
spayne & destroyed and put to deth the crysten men
Charles recouerd it, & other maters: capitulo v

How Aigoland
challenged
Charles,

¹How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably
come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12
how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, &
other maters: capitulo vj

How charles accompanied with moche peple retorned
to the place forsaid & took the cite of agenne, & other 16
maters: capitulo vij

Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan
he was retorned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in
his companye, and of theyr puyssaunce: capitulo viij 20

by whom he was
vanquished.

Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the
deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not bap-
tysed: ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple,
& how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24
concupyscence of money, & the crysten founden dede
by myracle: ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant,
how he bare awaye the barons of fraunce with out
daunger, & how afterward rolland fouzt ayenst hym: 28
ca. xj

Of Ferragus the
giant,

and his duel with
Roland.

How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten
to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by
what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland: ca. xij 32

How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of
that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc-
tyon: ca. xij

- How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chircches ¹of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y^e pryncypal 4 chyrches : [ca.] xiiij
- ¶ The second^e partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce. Pt II contains x chapters.
- 8 How the trayson was comprysed by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreued by thauctour : ca. j
- Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and how Rolland was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and deed : capitulo ij
- 12 How Rolland deyed moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and prayed to god moche deuoutely, and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal : capitulo ij
- Of the vysion of the deth of rolland shewed to tharchebyssshop Turpyn, & of the sorowe of charles, & how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iij
- 20 How olyuer was founden slayn, and of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo v
- 24 How after the thynges aforesayd Charles gaf thankynges and preysynges to god and to Saynt Denys : And of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo vj
- 28 How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed holyly, ²and of his deth shewed to tharchebyssshop Turpyn, and of his buryeng Imperyally : ca. vij
- Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and of hys deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo viij
- Thexusaeyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix
- Thenuoye of thauctour : ca. x

¶ Explicit

¹ A v, bk.² col. 2.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynymys vnto kyng'
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo
primo]

Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francus, a

companion of
Æneas,

and of the kings
of France after
him.

¹ **A**S it is redde in thystoryes of the troians 4
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of
Troye there was a kyng^e moche noble named^e
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for
the felycyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfy a
cyte whiche he named^e fraunce, & so folowynge all the
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhauuced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The
second was marcurius xxxiiij yere; The iij pharamundus
regned xj yere; The iiij clodyus xiiij yere; The v 16
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng^e whyche
regned vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of
our lord cccclxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a litel mencyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Gnidengus,
King of Bur-
gundy, and his
four sons.

IN that tyme was kyng^e of the burgoybons guy-
dengus, the whiche had^e iiij sones al of good
aege, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij ²godog-
sylvus, the iij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and after

- henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned hyr. This hyspericus had two fayre daughters, the eldest was named throne whom agabondus her vncle
 4 bannysshed fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssmyled. The yonger of these ij douzters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng¹ thys the kyng clodoneus, or
 8 Cloys in frencyshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyldys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng
 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd messagers notyfyed it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,
 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys doughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng¹ those dayes the kyng¹ Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named
 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord wente¹ to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and dyssmyled, & left his good habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche
 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplyshed this mayde Clotildis,
 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng¹ fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad & wel
 32 contente kyssed¹ hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed¹ hyr honde & sent for to seche hym by hyr seruaunt. whan he wyst it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis,
daughter of
Hyspericus,
and of her great
beauty.

Cloys sends
Aurelian in dis-
guise to see
Clotildis.

He presents him-
self before her to
receive alms.

She sends for him,

¹ A vj, back.

and asks him
who he is,
and his object in
coming.

Aurelian tells her,
and presents the
ring of Cloys.

Clotildis says she
cannot marry a
pagan.

Next year Cloys
demands Clotildis
to wife from Aga-
bondus,

who at first re-
fuses, but after-
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the rynge of kyng cloys
& humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde
began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymyl-
est thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus 4
answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am
a messenger of the noble kyng¹ cloys kyng¹ of Fraunce,
whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng¹ enformed of
your beaute & wysdom desyareth you to be hys wyf & 8
for to be quene," & forthwith he ¹presented to hir the
rynge of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to
the tresour of agabondus hir vncle, & sayd to the mes-
sager that he shold¹ recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12
tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to
haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she
prayed hym that of al this he shold¹ say noo worde, &
that she wold¹ not doo but as the kyng¹ wold¹. & vpon 16
this poynt aurelianus came and shewed al to the kyng,
wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng¹ sent ageyn
his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vncle of Clotildis
for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20
thentencyon of kyng cloys he answerd to the messenger:
"Say hardyly to the kyng¹ thy lord that he hath lytel
to do in desyryng¹ to haue my nyece to wyf:" but the
bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the puy- 24
saunce of kyng Cloys, by good¹ counceyl whan they had
wel serched the tresour of Agabondus their kyng &
founde the rynge of kyng cloys which clotylidis had
layed therin, wherein was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28
wente & concluded to performe the wyll of kyng clois:
& vpon this agabondus ful of yre delyuerd Clotildis to
aurelianus & he brougt hir with his peple with grete
Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete ²playsyr to see 32
thys fayr mayde. And forthwyth with al solemnyte
after the maner royal he espoused¹ hir after the custome
of his lawe.

¹ col. 2.

² A vij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the
 quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'
 byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other
 4 maters : capitulo iij

THe fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre
 that the kyng' and the quene shold slepe to-
 gyder, Clotylidis enbraced wyth the loue of god
 8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord went and said
 to the kyng' : "My right dere lord, I requyre the
 that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde
 byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The
 12 kyng' sayd : "demaunde what thou wylt For I am
 wel contente." Clotylidis thenne sayd to hym : "Fyrst,
 I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt
 byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made
 16 heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in
 Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng' of alle kynges,
 which by his passyon hath redemed the. And in the
 holy ghoost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good
 20 werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the
 foresayd Trynyte in one onely essen[ce], to whome
 ought to be gy¹uen al honour and all lawde & byleue.
 Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and leue
 24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng
 and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrches
 whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the
 that thou wylt demaunde my parte and porcyon of the
 28 goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabondus myn
 vncle whom he dyd put to deth falsely and wythoute
 occasyon, but the vengeance I leue to god." whan she
 had said this the kyng' answerd : ¶ "Thou hast
 32 demaunded me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer
 strait & hard to graunte, that is that I shold forsake
 my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes
 two requests of
 Cloys.

First, that he will
 become a
 Christian

and forsake his
 false gods.

Secondly, that he
 will demand her
 dowry from Aga-
 bondus.

Cloy's begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request.

Cloy's sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloy's says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

only god of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye & byseche the that thou wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he shold as soone haue alle his royame as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym: "the kyng cloy's my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyce of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and to take playsyr to haue good alyaunces with clois the kyng and wyth all the frensshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayned to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24 peple, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng Cloy's. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloy's in vysityng his royame The quene clotyldis was anon grete with chylde, and sone after was delyuerd 28 of a sone whome she dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly requyred the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd, but he in no wyse wold here her ne do therafter. And whan the chylde was baptysed anone it exsperd 32 & dyed, wherof the kyng was euyl contente and sayd to the quene: "yf thou haddest gyuen hym and dedyed hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

quene answerd: "for this thyng I am noo thyng per-
 turbled in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges
 to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his
 royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,
 the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named
 Iodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.
 And whan the kyng sawe it languyshe he beyng euyl
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"¹ sayd he,
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was
 12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the
 quene for the fere of the kyng prayed to god deuoutely
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was
 16 guarlysshed and hool.

A second son
 also falls ill after
 baptism,

but through the
 queen's prayers
 recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was vycoryous of hys
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu
 Cryste: Capitulo iiij

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so
 perseueryng the ²allemayns had vycorye on
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-
 24 throwen & slayn. Therne whan aurelyen sawe the
 dystructyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde
 the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see
 tofore your eyen the mortal destructyon of your peple,
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on."
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen
 and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the
 Germans,

but is defeated
 with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls
 on the king to be
 converted,

¹ *Ed.* how.

² A viij.

and the king
yields to his
entreaties.

Clois having
acknowledged
himself a
Christian prays
to God for aid.

He gains a victory
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty,
on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert
precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them
that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4
socour that I may be vycoryous of myn enemyes by
experyence presently. I byleue¹ on the, and in thy
name I shalle baptyse me. I haue demaunded my
goddess for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8
for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo
comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre
them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre
the that I may be delyuerd by thy hye puyssaunce fro 12
myn aduer²saries." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe
voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & mur-
dred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng
was deed, wherefore they that abode yelded them to 16
kyng cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that
contreye vnder hys obayssaunce & puyssaunce payeng
yerely trybute. Thenne after this vycory by the
puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20
recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Inuocacion
dyuyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned
vycorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle
was brouzt the holy ampulle by an aungel
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges
of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildis sends
for Remigins
to baptise Clois.

After that the quene had herde the kynge whyche
was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the
vycorye whych he had obteyned she had grete 32
Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop

¹ Ed. byleueue.

² col. ij.

of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for
to preche to the kyng¹ his saluacyon & the manere of
the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that
4 ¹he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to
excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst,
And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyng¹ the
error of thyddolles they began al to byleue in god &
8 say: "Syr kyng¹ glorious, it is best that ye forsake
thyddolles and adoure the god¹ Immortal whome the
quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be
contente." Incontynent al this was shewed¹ to saynt
12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them
dilygently as a good¹ herdman that taketh grete payne
to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr
ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyng¹ and¹
16 hys prechyng¹ dyd¹ soo grete prouffyte that it made the
peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy bap-
tesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen.
wherfore the necessyte of the saluacion of thys kyng¹
20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed¹ to byleue, conioyned to
good¹ entencyon maad¹ affectuously saynt Remyge to
come, for he thought wel whan the kyng¹ was baptysed¹
and¹ byleued¹ in Ihesu cryst and¹ his commaundements
24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold¹ do the same
wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and¹ had¹
commyned with the kyng touchyng¹ his salua²-cyon
[he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptysen hym
28 honourably, and¹ dyd¹ do³ paynte the hystories after
somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and
repayred¹ the places ryght delyciously. ¶ And on that
other he dyd¹ do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,
32 & compose baptызatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan
al this was done ⁴y^e kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes,
and by his
preaching
converts the
whole French
nation,

who urge the
king to forsake
idolatry.

St. Remigius
makes prepara-
tions for the
baptism of Clois.

¹ A viij, back.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. to.

⁴ The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And theene the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

He delivers an
exhortation to
the king.

Remigius
declares the
articles of the
Christian faith.

Clois and all his
subjects are
baptised.

A dove brings
from heaven a
vessel containing
chrisam.

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of
god saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.
¶ "Syr kyng, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure en-
tencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4
this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al
vanyte and do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon.
And ye ought to byleue wyth ryzt humble hert in one
onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8
ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created
heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouzt to gyue
fayth and creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,
whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature ¹wold 12
take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence
of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued in
the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy
ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16
deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed and roos
fro deth to lyf, and after ascended in to heuen, and
sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro
thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyng and deed. 20
¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque
moder, & her ordonnayre." and whan saynt Remyge
had ynough enformed the kyng and the peple of our
fayth and byleue he baptysed them in the name of the 24
fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan
he came to enoyntyng after the custome of the holy
cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the
plesyr of god and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28
stondyng,² sodeynlye came down descendyng fro heuen
a douue shynnyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy
ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy
cresme was, wherwyth the kyng cloys was fyrst 32

[*printed* taptesme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr
manere: "Syr Kyng, it is tyme that 3e ought of pure Inten-
cion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme 3e haue
byleued on."

¹ B j.

² *Ed.* stondyng.

enoynted in grete deuocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therein the kynges of fraunce ¹onelye been
 4 enoynted ones in theyr consecracyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed the systers of the sayd kyng and thre thousand men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and exaltacion of glorie.

with which all
 kings of France
 since have been
 consecrated.

8 ¶ The second' partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and' speketh of the begynnyng' of kyng' Pepyn And' Charle- mayn hys sone.

12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng' of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled' in successyon: ca. j

16 **T**He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng' Cloys the fyrst crysten kynge of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded' from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and twenty kyng, which was the kyng' Pepyn of another lygnage. And the

20 Kynge whyche was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which ²kyng' deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kynge put hym self in relygyon for

After the death of
 Clois Hildricus
 becomes king,

24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and moche noble prynce.

but gives up
 the throne to
 become a monk.

And by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded' of thys sayd Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn
 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfycially to speke of, And lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn

32 the prynce on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, "whether is he more worthy to be a

Pepin's demand
 of Pope Zachary,

¹ col. ij.

² B j, back.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and^r parfyght
 vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys
 he that retcheth of noo thyng and^r is abandonned and^r
 gyuen to all slouth and^r is onely contente to haue the 4
 name onely of kyng^r?” Whan the pope had^r herde thys
 demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght
 reason and^r veray equitye ought to be called a kyng that
 gouerneth and^r ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & 8
 contynueth it. For whyche ansuer & demaunde the
 Frensshe men by counceyl¹ ²approued^r consydered
 theyr kyng^r hyldrycus professed^r in a monasterye in lyf
 solytarye and^r contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- 12
 yng^r ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen
 solytarly,) how wel a kyng^r ought not to be solytarye,
 For suche as is the Kyng^r suche is the Royame. ¶ For
 salamon sayth, yf the kyng^r be neclygent the peple 16
 wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that
 hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng^r
 wel enformed^r of the condycions apperteynyng^r to a
 kyng^r after an auctour that sayth thus : ¶ “The Prynce 20
 whan he is ordeyned^r ought not to haue horses super-
 fluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought
 to be, and^r ought not to take .but seruauntes propyre³
 and^r necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and^r not to nour- 24
 ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffy-
 able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold^r eschewe
 multiplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn
 wymmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold^r not cor- 28
 rupte hys subgettes by euyl exauple. He shold^r not
 breke hys espousaylles, he shold^r gladly rede in bookes
 & shold^r haue by hym peple wel letterd^r, And shold^r
 Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges ⁴he 32
 shold^r adoure & serue god^r: he shold^r not gladly take
 yestes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers.”

and the Pope's
answer.

The duties and
qualities of a
king.

He should not
keep too many
horses or
servants,

nor keep bad
company.

He should be a
good husband,
fond of learning,
just,

and, above all,
religious.

¹ Ed. ceunceyl.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. propyre.

⁴ B ij.

- Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the conseruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which were at that tyme, [they] wente and chosen for to be
- 4 kyng of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and fro that tyme forthon the lygnage of kyng cloyes regned nomore vpon the frenshe men. And he was consecrate by saynt Boneface, And by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt
- 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles¹ the grete was confermed and approued and ordeyned all the kynges of fraunce in grete benediction to succede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And the said
- 12 pope gaf his maledyction to al them that were opposaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd. ¶ Thenne after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the englysshe men. And after the guyse Romayn he
- 16 ordeyned the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attributed by good ryght to hym by vycторыe obteyned, and was buryed in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.
- 20 And lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd whome he had gotten on the noble quene berte, doughter² of the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of romayns of germayns and of the grekes haue had curren-
- 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng the kyng Charles was chosen and maad Emperour of Rome. And the sayd kyng Pepyn regned xvij yere in prosperyte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder
- 28 of the sayd Charles had regned in his partye of the royame ij yere he deyed, And thenne after alle the gouvernement hoolly of the royame of fraunce abode to the sayd charles as here-after shalle be more playnly
- 32 shewed.

Pepin is chosen king by the French,

and consecrated by St. Boniface.

He makes war against the English.

At his death he leaves two sons,

between whom his kingdom is divided.

On the death of his brother Charlemagne becomes sole king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had' maad' many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

¹ *Ed. repeats* and charles.

² col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capitulo ij

THis noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys body, puyssaunce, and operacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was¹ onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope ²adryan regned & dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annullyng the heresydes and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And to many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the seruyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vycторыe of them in dyuers³ maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to paye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutelye. And after whan he retorned he took paye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he shal conferme and the rebellys that shal gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

His labours in the service of the church.

At the invitation of Pope Adrian Charles visits Rome.

He lays siege to Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council is held at Rome.

¹ *Ed.* he was. ² B ij, back. ³ *Ed.* dyners. ⁴ col. 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named
 Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of
 fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelite one to that
 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.

In that tyme many mortal warres duryng the lyf of
 kyng Pepyn & of charles and after that the royaume
 of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerd of the mys-
 8 creauntes, And maad pees not wythoute grete trauayll
 for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of
 the daungerous cowntre. whan alle thys was termyned
 to hys playsyr he reduced alle ytalye vnder the trybute

12 of the royaume of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan
 ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to
 gyue thankynges and laude to god moche deuoutelye
 for vycторыe that he had and for excusyon doon vpon
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And there with the pope
 Adryan he maad many constytucyons whyche by ryzt
 equitye ought wel to be obserued. And after he beyng

thus in Rome vycторыous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned
 20 & consecrate kyng of the ytalyens, And hys sone
 lowys was ordeyned and consecrate kyng vpon guyan.
 thys doon the Romayns whyche of grete ancyante were
 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them

24 put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned for
 themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the
 senatours and other Romayns; the whyche beyng in this
 poynte, after that they had taken delyberacyon of grete

28 councyl, seeyng the grete valure and noblesse of kyng
 Charles, whyche was so parfycht in alle noblesse
 hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche
 hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he

32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange &
 exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And by the honde
 of Pope Leo he was crowned emperour with alle
 honoures that myght be comprysed. And al wyth one

After many
 bloody wars he
 reduces Italy
 under his power.

His son Pepin is
 consecrated king
 of Italy; and his
 second son Louis
 king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen
 Emperor of
 Rome.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng¹
of ytalyens. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of
the maner of hys lyung': capitulo iiij

Of the good
works of Charles
during his reign
of 33 years.

¹ C Harlemayn Kyng of Fraunce after that he was
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8
regned emperour thyrte yere, And had thenne
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxiiij yere. And in
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was
his werkes wytnessen: as moche as toucheth thexcercyte
of hys persone Turpy n the holy man archebyssshop of 16
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man
wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys
syght and regarde fyers & malycious. ¶ The lengthe 20
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure
of his feet, which were merueyllously long; fatte, and
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24
armes and thy es he had ample and large: he was a
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28
a foot longe: ²he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes:
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had thys man: he had
the face of a large fote brode; he had the eyen like a
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his 32
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng'

According to
Turpin

Charles was
more than 8 feet
high, stout,
broad-shouldered,

and large of limb,

with a beard a
foot long.

His face was
long and fair:
his eyes bright
and sparkling.

¹ col. 2.

² B ij, back.

- his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij
fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle
to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was
4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunçe
he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes,
or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok,
or a crane, or an hare all hool : he dranke wyn sobrelly
8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a
lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght
armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from
the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he
12 had bytwene hys handes iiij hors shoen wyth outh
ouermoche prouyng hys myght he wold ryzt them outh
and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one
hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym
16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had
in hym thre thynges moche honourable : Fyrst, in
yestes ye¹uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus
themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodygal
20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche
he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he
promysed thyng that he myght not gyue, forthwyth
he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce
24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme
thyng. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement
that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was
pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte
28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And,
thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduysed :
whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd &
whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for
32 to compryse thentencyon of the spekar.

His waist was
8 feet round.

At his dinner he
could eat a
quarter of
mutton, or a
goose, or a
peacock, or a
hare.

His strength
was wonderfui.

He could lift an
armed knight
with one hand.

He was liberal to
all,

just and merciful,

and careful in his
language.

¹ col. 2.

¶ To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and
 hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte
 to doo : capitulo iiij

DAme bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete sey- 4
 ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour
 wexed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and
 ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.
 ¶ Of ¹whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to 8
 estudy, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence
 to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan
 they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the
 seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12
 for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he
 made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse
 the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd
 not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16
 and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to
 chyualry contynuely. After this he made his doughters
 to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other
 honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20
 slouth & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue
 occasyon to falle in thouzt dysordynate for to haue
 Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not
 occupied in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24
 employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thyng to
 thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the
 pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do
 alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28
 holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his entencyon
 dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in
 Acon in Almayn a ²chyrche of our lady comprysed of
 meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyned, and 32
 wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a
 parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

Charles had his
 sons taught
 religion, science,

jousting,
 the art of war,
 and hunting.

His daughters
 were taught to
 spin and sew,
 and other suitable
 accomplishments.

Charles was never
 idle, but fond of
 study.

He built at Acon
 a splendid church
 to our Lady.

¹ B iiij.

² col. 2.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by pyyssauunce in the royaume of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-

8 ters: capitulo

v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
contynued in them: And by ardaunt desyre
12 frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vvytyed on mornynge and on euenes & in
the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrificys & oblacions:
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely ¹the poure folke of
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &
syluer and vytayll after the necessitye of the place: as
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other
24 contreyes: as he that sayd: "golde and syluer is not
myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the
28 heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage Ioyous. he had
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
about alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper.
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede
the soule whiche is perpetual of spyrituel fode, for to

Of the religious
habits of Charles,

his alms-giving,

both at home and
abroad.

He was large of
body, and of a
pleasing
countenance.

He loved to hear
books read,

¹ B iiii, back.

especially the
De Civitate Dei
by Augustine.

He sent
commissioners to
study and report
on the state of his
kingdoms, and
the government
and laws of other
countries.

Aaron, king of
Persia, sends him
as a present an
elephant,

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker,
as of refecceyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,
And emonge al other bookes he deltyed strongely in
the bookes of saint austyn, especyally in that whyche 4
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8
bedde two¹ or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.
Thus Charles perseuerd² in felicyte ryal and emperyal,
& sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and 12
grete counceyllours³ for to vysyte hys prouynces and
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and
made many constytucyons & lawes accordyng to the 16
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles
sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal
memorye. & euery day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that 24
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng
that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor
he excersycyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued & 28
dere reputed of euery body. In that tyme Aaron the
kyng of perce for the magnifycence of charles sente to
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler
4yefte and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in
suche renomnee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* preseuerd.

³ *Ed.* counceyllours.

⁴ B v.

aaron the kyng¹ of Perse sente to hym emonge other
 yestes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and of saynt
 speratus and the heed of saynt Panthaleon marters in
 4 to Fraunce.

and the relics of
 several saints.

¶ The thyrd¹ parte of the fyrst book conteyn-
 eth thre chapytres, and¹ speketh how by
 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd¹ the
 8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynymys.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to
 Charles for socours after that he was de-
 iecte and¹ caste oute of the Turkes: capi-
 12 tulo primo.

IT is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo
 oppressyd¹ of the paynymys by mortall warre that
 16 vnnethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he
 knewe nomore what to do He had¹ in remembraunce the
 noble charles and¹ he beyng¹ enformed¹ of hys holynes,
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the
¹cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and¹ defendour of
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and¹ to hys
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste
 and¹ another whyche named¹ hym self Dauyd archeprest,
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to
 28 charles, And wyth them tweyne he ordeyned¹ for to goo
 wyth them two other whyche were named¹ ysaac and¹
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Con-
 32 stantyn had¹ wryton in one parte of the lettre thus:

The patriarch of
 Jerusalem, being
 hard pressed by
 the Saracens,

appeals to Charles
 for help.

Constantine
 writes a letter to
 Charles,

“On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that

he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng¹ ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and sayd to me with swete wordes : ‘Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doying of the paynymys whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed god for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pouchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng¹ of the gallyens, which is protectour of holy crystente and defendour of holy 8 chyrche.’ And after the same lady shewed me a knyght armed in al his body and spores on hys heles, & had¹ hys shelde rede, gyrd wyth hys swerde, & had his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And 12 the heed of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynnyng and he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and longe of body : 16 he had eyen shynnyng as ij sterres, and hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and after was wryton : ‘O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynges : be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere² and kepe alwaye the commandements, of god as thou oughtest to doo formerly.’” And as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had deieted the paynymys oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myȝt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And whan 28 the messagers had presented the letters and he had seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord so holden of the paynymys. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and maad hym to preche³ openlye the pyteous tydynges whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

¹ B v, back.

² Ed. preseuere.
³ col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete companye wente
4 for to conquere the holy lande, and many
other maters : capitulo ij

8 **A**fter that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was
publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct
and dyd do crye it thorough out al the contreye,
that euery man that myzt bere armes shold be redy for
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynymys, and he that wold
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycorye vnder the con-
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in
to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne,
and Charles thought to passe it in one daye : wherfore
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al
abashed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe any habytacyon,
but they were ferre fro ony and oute of their ryght
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the
psaulter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all
who can bear
arms to assemble.

An enormous
army comes
together, and
they start for
the Holy Land.

They lose their
way in a forest.

Charles prays to
God for help.

¹ B vj.

A bird comes and
tells him his
prayer is heard,

and afterwards
guides them to
the right road.

Charles clears the
country of
Saracens,

and prepares to
return home.

The Emperor
collects a large
number of valu-
able presents for
him,

say the vers folowyng "Deduc me domine in semita
mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys
there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche
that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys : 4
"kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that
were presente were moche troubled. and notwythstond-
yng¹ al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter
vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8
whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye
and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? ¹O
frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the
Kyng¹ and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde 12
whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche
they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms
sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes
so doying. But whan charles & hys grete puyssaunce 16
were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled
of theyr comyng¹ & the crysten lordes were gretely
reioysed of theyr comyng¹. For wythoute cessyng¹ he
rested not tyl that he had recouerd the contreye of 20
crysten men and expelled alle the paynymys whyche
moche redounded to hym grete honour & vycorye.
And in retournyng¹ he demaunded of themperour of
Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24
arkes & archepreestes. And themperour helde hym an
hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for
thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates
of the cyte dyd do-ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28
& dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer
and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it
for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon
in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32
he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to ²doe
in takyng¹ of the precyous & ryche yestes or to retourne
in to fraunce wythout takyng of ony thyng¹, And there

¹ col. 2.

² B vj, back.

vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no
 thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but
 for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content
 4 of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete
 payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles re-
 fuses to accept
 any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles
 brought fro constantynoble and' fro the
 8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were
 doon : capitulo iij

12 **W**Han themperour of constantynoble and the
 patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles
 wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd,
 he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,
 & whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that
 for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat
 16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.
 Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast
 euery man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to
 deuocyon and for to vysyte the holy reliques, and in
 20 especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych
 shold¹ treatate & see the relyques. Whan it came to
 the thyrde day the noble Charles by grete contryceyon
 confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After
 24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the
 letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And
 there was the prelate of naples named danyel, whyche
 in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the
 28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute
 of the same so grete an odour that all they that were
 presente thought to be in paradys. Thenne charles ful
 of hool and very creauce of fayth kneled down to the
 32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche
 strongly prayed our lord that for the glorye of hys

He asks, instead,
 for some relies of
 Our Lord.

The Emperor
 gives him the
 sacred crown of
 thorns.

¹ col. 2.

A delicious odour
issues from the
crown.

Charles deposits
the thorns and
flowers in a coffer,

where they are
turned into
manna, and
now are preserved
at St. Denys.

Three hundred
and one sick
persons are healed
by the scent of
the holy relics.

One who had been
blind, deaf, and
dumb for over 24
years,

name presently wold^d renewe the myracles of hys holy
passyon and glorious resurrexyon.¹ & assone as he had^d
prayed^d in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &
a meruayllous swete odour yssued^d out of the floures, 4
soo ry3t delycyous that eche man supposed^d that hys
vestementes & clothyng^d had^d comen oute of heuen.
¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kutting^d
wel purifyed^d to cutte the said crowne and^d in cutting^d 8
alwaye more & more the sayd^d crowne flourysshed^d and
the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the
2 floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a
lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and^d wept 12
so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to
tharchebysshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys
honde & supposed^d that the sayd^d Ebroin³ had^d holden
them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16
myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete
houre. And^d after whan he had^d gyuen in kepyng^d the
sayd^d thornes to the sayd^d Ebroin he sawe the coffret in
thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20
them self, whiche sone after were conuerted^d in to manna
and^d in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.
And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of
the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24
Thenne were there shewed^d myracles For al seek people
that were there present were heled^d of al theyr maladyes
by the odour of the floures aforesayd^d, and the peple
that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse 28
of peple cryed^d verytably that day was a day of helthe
& resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluos
floures alle the cytee was purifyed and replenysshed of
grace: for thre hondred^d & one seek man by compte 32
were heled^d & guarissed of their maladyes. 4 Emonge

al other ther was one seek of xxiiij yere & thre
monethes, whyche was blynde, deaf, & dumbe, but at

¹ *Ed.* resurrexyon.

² B vij.

³ *Ed.* Ebrom.

⁴ col. 2.

moment¹ whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne
 he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he
 recouuerd his heeryng, And in florysshyng of it he
 4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
 daniel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our
 lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence
 was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takyng oute of
 8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was
 drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
 to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said
 that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarlysshed
 12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the
 kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy
 sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady & the
 clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme
 16 of saynt Symeon ; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes
 & caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in
 passyng by a castel there was a chylde newe dede
 whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
 20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan
 he came to Acon in Almayne, ²whyche is a moche fayr
 cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche
 fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of
 24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste
 were guarlysshed & heled blynde men and seek men of
 the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij
 lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,
 28 lij of the fallyng sekene, lxv of the gowte, many of
 them of the same place & many of other maladyes.
 And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iul at
 Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the
 32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro
 Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was
 establysshed that one day of the weke of the fastyng of
 ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iul shold be made

and a child,
 a cripple from
 his birth,
 are healed by
 the relics.

The Emperor
 gives Charles a
 piece of the cross,

and the holy
 napkin and other
 relics,

with which he
 performs numer-
 ous miracles.

They are
 deposited at Acon,
 where they are
 shown.

¹ Ed. meuyng.

² B vij, back.

this demo[n]straunce and notyfycacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyne Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And Theophyle of anthyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre partyes by chapytres folowyng' declared'. 8

¶ ¹The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and' speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called' mormyonde charles abode folowyng' the warre aeynst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrst chapytre. 16

I haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfyecally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysed, in descendyng' after my purpoos vnto Kynge charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and of 20 hys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behauyng' I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyue by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrroure hystorial" and in auneyent cronycles, And haue onelye translated them oute of latyn in to frensshe. And the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maad of thauneyent facyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frensshe wherof I haue been encyted for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned. which book after somme ²and moost comunely is called "Fyeras-bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I shal make meneyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Speculum Historiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called 'Fieras-bras,'

¹ col. 2.

² B viij.

- quysshed by Olyuer, And at the laste baptysed &
 was after a saynt in heuen. And in effect it speketh
 of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered whiche
 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunce
 of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wher-
 fore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely
 to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to deuyde the
 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynaunce that I shal
 conne, wythoute to adiouste ony thyng that I haue
 not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I
 shal fynde I shal reduce. And thys book is applyed to
 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that
 there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of
 eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles
 whyche ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xiii, and
 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexcer-
 cyte and moche stronge and valyaunte of theyr persones,
 & were grete lordes and noble. But of the lordes
 valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiii after that I
 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone
 of myllon ¹erle and of dame berthe propre syster of
 kyng Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of
 Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexcersyte
 24 of kyng Charles: After hym Rychard of Normandy,
 Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord of bourdeloys,
 Hoel Erle of Nauntes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of
 denmarke, Lambert prynce of bruxellys, Naymes Duk
 28 of bauyer, Thiery duc of ardanne, Basyn of beneuoys,
 Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng of Fryse, Ganellon
 whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij book at
 rounyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there
 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and
 many other that were subgettes to Charles. And not-
 wythstondyng that they were not alwaye with hym
 They that I haue tofore named were alwaye redy for to

and have only
reduced the
ancient rime into
prose,

without adding
anything.

The Peers of
France, though
commonly said to
be 12 or 13,

were more than
that number.

They were
Roland,

Oliver,

Richard,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,

Naymes,
Thiery, Basin,

Ganelon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris,
and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcersyte of Charles : capitulo [j] 4

Fierabras, son of Balan, was a mighty giant. (50)

He was king of Alexandria, (53) Babylon, Russia, and Jerusalem. (66)

This Fierabras rides furiously up to the camp of Charles, (76)

wishing to find some Christian to fight with him.

THe admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple, had a sone ¹ named Fyerabras the moost meruaylous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8 the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng² of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12 & of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare away the 16 holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recounthe how they were recouerd. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20 & bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the paynmys and thexcersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24 came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furyous and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28 vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of themperour charles ² whyche were of the aygle shynnyng, And he sware by Mahomett his god & by his myzt that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32 made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

¹ B viij, back.

² col. 2.

- that no man cam to hym began to crye with an hye
 voys : " O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,
 sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of
 4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as He challenges
Roland or
Oliver, (96)
 Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoyis ; &
 swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse
 vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued
 8 of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I
 of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyzt
 thou shalt of me be assaylled & dyscomfyted & I shal
 smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng ;
 12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,
 meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragiously & folly as euyll
 and olde thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye
 wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastily to departe." These He takes off his
arms and lies
down under a
tree, (90)
 16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto
 the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym
 of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his
 hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he
 20 began to crye ¹with an hye voys : " o charlemayn,
 kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue
 thys day so ofte called? wythoute more lenger delaye
 sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom
 24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or
 ogyer the danoyis whom I haue herde preysed. And yf
 perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly
 late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-
 28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.
 And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For
 vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn
 excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to
 32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for
 be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I
 be fugytyf for ony frensshe man lyuyng. I haue here
 tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten He declares he has
already slain ten
kings in single
combat. (108)

kynges of grete puyssaunce, and that they coude not
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4
ca. iij

Charles enquires
who the strange
knight is. (115)

As soon as fyerabras had fynysshed his wordes the
Emperour Charles whyche ¹wel had herde hym
meruaylled moche of his langage, And demaunded 8
Rychard of Normandye what was that Turke that so had
cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of his
persone. For kyng Charles sayd : "I haue wel herke-
ned what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12
ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte."
To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd : "Syr
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the
strengest borne of moder : And he is a sarasyn of so 16
grete fyerste that he ne preysyth kyng ne erle ne none
other persone of the world."

Richard tells
him. (120)

Charles swears
that one of his
knights shall
accept the
challenge, (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe
his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20
he shold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres
of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded
of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was
named. ¶ Rychard answerd : "syr Emperour, this 24
paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to
redoubte and hath done moche harme to² crysten men.
He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and
nonnes, and hath defuled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28
robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and
many other relyques ³for whome ye take grete payne.
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subjectyon And
the holy sepulcre wherin god was buried." Wherupon 32
Charles ansuerd : "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. or.

³ C j, back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn
 I shalle neuer haue Ioye tyll that my desyre be accom-
 plysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoeued and troubled
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that
 thou doo there thy deuoyr."

and that he will
 never rest till
 some one does
 so. (129)

Charles asks
 Roland to accept
 the challenge,
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij

WHan themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
 toysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr
 16 vncl, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take
 ar-¹mes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynmys,
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousand, we yonge
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole
 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at
 euen, whan ye were wel dronken ye maad auaunte
 openlye that the olde and auneyent knyghtes whyche
 28 ye had brouzt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And euery man
 knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and
 32 very of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my
 faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. ¶ And now it
 shal be knowen how the olde & auneyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles
 that he had
 sneered at him
 and his com-
 panions the pre-
 vious night. (148)

Charles in a rage
strikes him in
the face with his
gauntlet. (166)

Roland draws his
sword (168)
on his uncle.

Charles orders
him to be
seized, (176)

but no one dares
to approach
him. (181)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his
subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that
euer shal be in my fauour and loue yf he take vpon hym
to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland 4
had spoken that worde Themperour hys vnclē hauyng
moche Indignacion therat ¹ smote hym thwarte the vysage
wyth hys ryght gauntelet² that hys nose breste a blood
habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland in a 8
grete furey sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe
hys blood, and had smeton hys vnclē yf he had not be
lette by them that were presente. And whan Charles
sawe thentencyon of Roulland he was meruayllously 12
abashed & sayd: "O god of heuen, who wold haue
thought that I shold haue had vylonye of Rolland my
neuw whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst
our aduersaryes? And he cometh rennyng³ agenst me 16
wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my
blood and lignage that here is present, And that more
sonner shold socoure me than any other! ¶ Now I
beseche God that on the crosse suffred passyon that this 20
day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And this said
in a grete furour he comaunded the frensshe men &
sayd to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shal neuer
ete tyl he be delyuerd to deth." Whan the frensshe 24
men vnderstood the commaundem^ent of Charles for to
haue accomplysshed it that one loked vpon that other
for to see who wold sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And
whan Roulland sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel 28
a-parte ³ wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng with an
hyghe voys and sayeng to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde
you styll, For I make a-vowe to god that yf ony of you
moeue to come to me I shal make of hys heed two 32
partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that
was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were
ryght sory & euyll contente of theyr debate. and there

¹ C ij.

² Ed. ganntetet.

³ col. 2.

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and
 sayd to hym : "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not
 wel for to angre thus your vncl the emperour, whom
 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende
 & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne
 was refrayned of hys Ire : "Syr Ogier, I promyse you
 for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete outrage
 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory
 and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes
 and settles the
 quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been
 repreu'd by the auctour and' somewhat
 12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

V Pon the debate of themperour and' Rolland' hys
 neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to
 1 the kyng' Charles, whyche haste be Instructe
 16 syth thyn Infancye in alle scyences ful of maners digne
 of commemoracyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of
 the auncyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple.
 why saydest thou on the euene that the auncyent and
 20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them
 better than the yonge knyghtes? And thou knewest wele
 that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in
 suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-
 24 land' thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the
 bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest
 to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng' whiche is not in
 the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys
 28 at the word that sayth : "Vindictam differ donec per-
 transeat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate
 thy vengeaunce tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest
 not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it
 32 was wythout aduys of grete dycrescyon. thou smotest
 hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's
 reproof of Roland
 and Charles.

Charles ought to
 have remembered
 the noble deeds of
 Roland, and
 his youth,

and should have
 restrained his
 anger, even
 under pro-
 vocation.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym
 thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.
 Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesiastes whyche sayth :
 "Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:" whan ¹a man re- 4
 ceyueth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo
 that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a per-
 sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome
 he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng^r is blamed, 8
 of soo moche the more is he euyll contente and wrothe.
 For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was
 it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be alowed
 & preysed for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12
 that the Emperour sayd that tholde knyghtes had doon
 better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O
 Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh
 in the suche audacyte to speke ageynst thyn vncl 16
 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes
 been worthy to be remembre^d? To hym which is
 emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremeur,
 and to thyn vncl as taken debate and ansuered out- 20
 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre
 hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-
 let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy
 swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24
 obeyssaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou
 were not aduysed of thys that thapostle saith: "ye
 yonge men ²kepe your courage And put not the furour
 therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28
 preysed thauncyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou
 haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in
 hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is
 more aunceyent than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32
 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is
 suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym
 sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be paycent:

Roland ought to
 have remembered
 the respect he
 owed to his uncle,

according to the
 words of St. Paul:
 'Rebuke not an
 elder, but entreat
 him as a father.'

¹ col. 2.

² C iij.

wherfore it is good to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng but yf it be good.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst

4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**Oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland hys neuewe And sayd to hys Peres of Fraunce :
 “ Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of my neuewe Rolland, whyche wold haue Iniuryed my persone, To whome I had more affyaunce than to ony man lyuyng! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne
 12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further¹more I haue noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym that hath chalenged me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore hym Naymes the Duc of bauyers whych sayd to the
 16 kyng : “ Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuertheles the kyng was in grete thought, For there was
 20 none that wold goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente the tydynges of the debate of charles and Rolland were brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen
 24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle Olyuer, replenysshed wyth a noble courage and wyth an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng, whan he had
 28 herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and began for to scratche an^d strayne hys armes and to fele yf it were possyble to hym to bere armes.

Charles appeals to his knights to settle who shall accept the challenge. (190)

Naymes tries to cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how none can be found to accept the challenge. (206)

He calls for his arms. (210)

And he thus dooyng his woundes began newly to
 32 opene that the blood sprange oute of the dystresse.
 ¶ And not wythstondyng alle that as he that sette not moche therby

His wounds break out afresh.

and his esquire
remonstrates with
him, (220)
but in vain.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps
him to arm, (234)

and brings him
his horse. (240)

Oliver mounts,
(241)

takes his arms,

For the grete loue and desyre ¹that he had to the kyng [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym 4 for to goo Iust ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- 8 ment no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and auauncement and renomme. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn- guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensshe man 12 auaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wyth- oute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme 16 hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys har- nays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hauteclere, the whyche swerde 20 he moche loued.

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle sadled ²and 24 brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the sadle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette hys shelde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after 28 smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the leepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenance. And they that were presente by- 32 sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in hys keepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

¹ C iij, back.

² col. 2.

was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is
 Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant
 of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of
 4 god the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on
 horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his
 body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of
 Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wyll of god,
 8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comferte and ayde
 after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was
 byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys
 body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth
 12 vnto the lyces of ¹themperour Charles with whom was
 the Duc naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondy-
 dyer, and Ogyer the danoyes, wyth other barons of
 fraunce²: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vncle the
 kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he
 had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was
 requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was
 20 moche alowed & preysed of one and other & moche
 affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put down
 his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng, And
 reuerently came & salewed hym, and after sayd to hym:
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-
 guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that
 there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your
 seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I
 28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde
 me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre." To whom the
 kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by
 my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wyll. And
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte,
 borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng
 that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed
 to you." "Syr kyng," said ³Olyuer, "I am not comen

commends him-
 self to God, (256).

and rides
 to Charles's
 tent. (257)

Roland regrets
 his refusal of the
 challenge. (260)

Oliver salutes
 the king,

reminds him of
 his long and
 faithful services,
 (268)

¹ C iiij.

² Ed. Freunce.

³ col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (237)

Charles remonstrates with him. (232)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganellon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yeste to be quyte 4 of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8 to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte, For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square and sharpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12 and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste. For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16 helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the laste book shall make mencyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20 deygned in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is Iuged, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij Iuge & ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo¹ the bataylle." wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24 chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyl dysposycyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable. Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28 my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the gold of the world shal not saue the but that thou shalt dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lygnage." "Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32 kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly: "God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue hys heed smyton of." and whan themperour sawe that

¹ C iiij, back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shold^d goo and
 doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye and gives Oliver
his glove.
 god of the fyrmamente gyue the grace to do wel & that
 4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght
 gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued
 wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankynge hym ryght
 humbly and takynge leue of al moche swetely.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader
 reyner that he shold not fyght wyth the
 geaunt, but for al that he went forth:
 ca. vij

12 ¹ **W**Han that Olyuer was lycenced for to goo do
 hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner
 of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
 grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd: Reyner appeals to
Charles not to
allow Oliver to
fight,
 16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
 and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me
 whan I see that my sone gooth to perdycon seeynge
 the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
 20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
 ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded daungerously.
 ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that
 hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle."

24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen but in vain.
 to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wyth-
 stondynge these wordes doubted no thyng but that he
 shold wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet
 28 ageyn reyner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,
 in thonour of hym that for vs deyed on the crosse
 suffre not my sone to Iust. Alas! whan I shal haue Reyner again
protests and
appeals.
 lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel
 32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-
 perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that

Oliver bids his
comrades fare-
well.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For
in sygne of ly-^lcence I haue gyuen hym my gloue,
wherof Olyuer was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd
wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, 4
and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that
is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon
in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name
of god ye pardozne me." whan the freysssh men herde 8
hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-
derly, and soo takyng hys leue wyth his standard
reysed The kyng blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of
the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the kepyng 12
of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghoost.

Charles gives him
his blessing.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche
sette noo thyng by hym, with other dis-
putacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to
Fierabras, (344)

Olyuer departed & rode forth on hys waye & taryed
not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which
was al vnarmed and laye in the shadowe. and
whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym turned 20
his heed ayenst hym and dayned vnnethe to loke on hym.
For he setted nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel
of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne
Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, ²thou hast 24
thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And
I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras
ansuerd to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I
owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28
world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I
am he that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye rome
your cyte, & slewe the Pope and many other and bare
awaye the re-lyques that I there founde, For which ye 32
take grete payne and laboure to recouer them. And

and demands his
name. (351)

Fierabras tells
him, and boasts
of his exploits.
(352)

furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the sepulchre in whych your godd rested." Olyuer answered :

"by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche
4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast
sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well
vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng
make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the

Oliver bids him
arm himself.
(384)

8 frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs?
wherfore depesshe the, or¹ by the god on whome I by-
leue I shal smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyer-
abras herde that he spake soo hardly he began to
12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens
that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so
hastly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens
tyll ²I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage.

16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt
see me armed." Olyuer answered to hym: "O paynem,
know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt
knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the

Fierabras asks his
name and rank.
(388)

20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion³
of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue
the creaunce of thy godd Mahoun, & of other ydolles,
whyche ben but abusyon and decepcyon: whyche haue

Oliver calls on
Fierabras to
renounce Maho-
met, (395)

24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne goodd vnder-
standyng . wherfore that thou enclyne the to consente
and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in godd almyghty
the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy

and repeats the
articles of the
Christian faith.
(398)

28 ghoost, iij persones in one essence & of one wyll:
whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there
in dwelleth: whyche for our saluacion wold be borne
of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalt haue this

32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is
vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorie
eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

¹ Ed. For.

² C v, back.

³ Ed. consecracion.

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (402)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes. (408)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (425)

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must ¹come and fyght ayenst 4 me For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Intencyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the god in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charle-mayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preysed 12 and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogyer the danoys and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: 16 "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, & of hys 20 maners, as of hys puyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- 24 aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the god on whom I byleue yf thou ²auaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys 28 heed and sayd: "By my god mahommet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyshonour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, 32 For certeyn I haue entencyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

¹ col. 2.

² C vj.

shelde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage."

Fierabras asks Oliver his name. (441)

Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am 4 borne in perrogort, sone of a man called Iosue, whyche came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knyght by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the.

Oliver tells him he is Garin, a poor knight. (443)

8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogier, whyche been of so grete renommee ¹as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuerd:

Fierabras asks him why Ogier or Oliver has not come to meet him. (454)

16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the

Oliver says it is because they despise him. (457)

20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knyght I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me

Fierabras says he never fights except with a king or a noble. (465)

28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle down to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde

32 and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughdest for thys tyme to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (470)

Oliver threatens
him. (484)

Fierabras asks for
one of the douze-
peres.

He sees the blood
run from Oliver's
wound, (497)

and asks if he is
wounded? Oliver
says, "No."

Fierabras offers
to cure him with
the holy balm,
(510)

but Oliver re-
fuses.

not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym : "Thy fayt
lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of ¹folysse pre-
sumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euen-
songe tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy sholdres. 4
I am none hare ne wyld beest for to be aferde, And
thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there
is a tyme of spekyng and tyme of beyng styll, And of
one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8
come of & depesse the of that I haue sayd the or
ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : "I desyre
ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me
Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12
rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to
come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they
shal not be refused." In makynge these desputacyons
Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16
opened by force of rydyng and of chauffynge & bledde
sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is
knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that
blood that soo renneth down to therthe : "I trowe thou 20
be hurte." Olyuer sayd : "I am not hurte but my hors
is harde atte spore wherof he is blody." Fyerabras be-
helde & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd :
"Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24
in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh
doun by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the :
there been two flagons hangynge on the saddle of my hors
whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28
Iherusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god was
enbawmed wyth whan he was taken down fro the
crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo
drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32
thou shalte be hole and thezue thou shalt mowe defende
the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer ansuerd that
he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

¹ C vj, back.

² col. 2.

fyerabras ansuerd' that he was a fool wythoute reason,
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'

4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name:

ca.

ix

8 **W**Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wyth-
oute arysyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and
after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-
oute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer
that been soo moche redoubted of paynems, & of what
12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchyng
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than ¹I am, but of
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world
but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a
thyng wherof I am moche abasshed. For yf they
were suche foure as thou tellest to me. I wold not refuse
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue
pacyence vnto the delays of fyerabras but made redy
to synye hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,² By mahoun
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng ne
alle thy goddes³ shal not redeme the but that thou shalt
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks
him to describe
Roland and
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he
would not be
afraid of four
such. (536)

¹ C vij.

² Ed. personr.

³ Ed. goodes.

Oliver at last
induces Fierabras
to rise. (546)

He is 15 feet
high.

He bids Oliver go
back and send
Roland, or Ogier,
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks
Oliver to help him
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a
noble example of
chivalry and
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouer-
longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy
lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by
ouer ¹moche spekyng¹ otherwyse than trouthe may 4
brynge the soone to myschyf." Herof was fyerabras
strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete
fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot
longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and byleue in 8
Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure.
And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by
cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym,
and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12
thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in
the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou
retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer,
or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressely say to Olyuer 16
that I shall not passe thys anauntgarde tyl I haue
conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the
paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had
smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20
must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed
hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer de-
maunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd:
"helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24
neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man
lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his
diligence ²to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of
arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28
his habergeon of stele wele boucled & polysshed: &
after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth
precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the
facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32
was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche
were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to
slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

¹ col. 2.

² C vij, back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym had grete pyte for to destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte
 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dysarmed he had slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he
 8 had wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded to arme hym that shold fyzt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche were of fayth and creaunce contrærye! I suppose that
 12 god shold be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse. But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras was wel armed he than-¹ked moche Olyuer, And after
 16 gyrd hys swerde named plourance.² and in the arson of his sadyl he had tweyne other of whom that one was named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none
 20 harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I haue founden by wrytyng. ¶ On a tyme there were
 24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that one was named Galaus, that other Munyfcans, & the thyrd was called Agnisiæ. These iij brethern made ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiæ the thyrd
 28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche had the pomel of gold and wel enameld, & also plourance,² and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes fyerabras had as I haue sayd. Munyfcans, that other
 32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named durandal, Whyche Rolland had. that other was called sauuognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the danoy had. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

Would that there were such between all Christian men!

Fierabras takes his three swords,

made by one of three brothers,

by another of whom Durendal and Cortan were made,

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* plourance.

and by the third
Joyous and
Floberge.

Fierabras takes
with him the two
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of
his horse.

Fierabras wishes
Oliver to retire.
(556)

Oliver refuses.
(565)

Fierabras con-
fines Oliver on his
faith and loyalty
to reveal his true
name. (637)

the swerd that was named¹ Floberge, another called
haulteclere, and² that other Ioyouse, whyche Charle-
mayn had³ for a grete specyalte. and these ¹iiij brethern
aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4
And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe
And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And
henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and⁴
bended⁵ wyth yron and⁶ stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8
And in the myddle of the same sheld⁷e was paynted⁸ hys
god⁹ Appollyn. and¹⁰ after that he had¹¹ commaunded¹² hym
to hys god¹³ he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was
sharpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12
to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on
hys hors named¹⁴ feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, &
pommellyd¹⁵, whyche had a specyal condycyon : For whan
his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16
sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson
than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on hors¹⁶ back
Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer : “O garyn, gracyous and
curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20
thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without
fyghtyng¹⁷, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage.”
Olyuer answerde : “alwaye thou spekest of grete folye
for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24
membred¹⁸. For I am not he that thou wenest to make
aferde : for ²by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day
shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the
emperour.” Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28
was meruayllously abasshed¹⁹ of thys man that wold²⁰ not
lete for menace that he maad²¹ to hym, but wold²² haue
the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd²³ to hym : “Thou art a
crysten man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32
you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche
thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast
gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god²⁴ henge and²⁵ was

¹ C viij.

² col. 2.

naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles
 themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of
 fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght
 4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,
 Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche
 wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely
 myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherefore knowe thou
 8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes, Oliver tells him,
(650)
 the moost especyal felowe of rolland, and am one of the
 twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye
 thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest
 12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not
 make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,
 sir Oliuer, ¹are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete
 dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye whereupon Fiera-
bras presses to
retire on account
of his wound.
 16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold
 be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue
 don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I
 wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."
 20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by
 my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no
 courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you
 wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer
 24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:
 "O paynym, or we procede ony ferther now I admonest
 the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche
 hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng¹ owen
 28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh
 not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake
 Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepcyon, &
 dyspose the to be baptyسد, & thou shalt haue to thy
 32 frende the grete charles and a specyall felowe of Rolland
 the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my
 lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras
 ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

¹ C viij, back.

The Saracen
refuses.

For for no thyng¹ I shalle not byleue in your god ne shal forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4 the."

¶ How Olyuer and' fyerabras began to fyzt, & of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of other maters : capitulo x 8

Fierabras offers
Oliver some of
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.
(602)

The French pray
for Oliver's
success,

and especially
Charles.

At the first onset
their spears are
broken,

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd : " my frende, I praye the pat thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12 vertue of the bawme that is therin Incontynent thou shalt be heled & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst me." " God forbede," sayd olyuer, " that by drynke thou be conquerd of me but by franke bataylle and 16 harnois fourbysshed." And thys sayd they lete their horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter- aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had grete 20 fere and drede leste it shold mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng sayd : " O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte of Olyuer my 2 baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24 ageyn alyue & in helthe !" and after feruently came in to hys chapel hydyng his vysage wyth hys mantel and kneled before the crosse and embraced the crucifyx wyth grete teeres, sayeng : " My lord god, of whome I 28 see here the remembraunce, I byseche the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for thexaltaeyon of the crysten fayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles fyerabras and olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32 sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force bowed and entred that the fyre sprange out on al

¹ col. 2.

² D j.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce

and both are stunned.

8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruayllously shynynge & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it

Oliver cuts off a part of Fierabras' helmet, (616)

12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the ground; and with ¹the same stroke in descendynge he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore

16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen² to thys paynym!" "ye,"

and nearly unhorses him.

20 sayde rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! ¶ Now wolde god of heuen," sayde Rolland, "that I were now vnder the shelde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."

24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answered: "Ha! euyl gloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of

28 me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course

32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke³ vpon his helme so sharply that he trenched moo than vc maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

Fierabras strikes Oliver on the helmet, and wounds his horse. (591)

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* gynen.

³ *Ed.* steoke.

Oliver calls on
God and the
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again
offers to let him
go,

on account of his
wound,

but Oliver defies
him. (597)

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras ¹was al bloody :
of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he
had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was
bowed afterward that he was al to broken. And his 4
hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen
to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ "O
lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I
receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8
pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of
thys paynym. yeue me grace that I may ones haue
hym : " and made vpon hym self the sygne of the
crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : " Olyuer, by 12
Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maa the aferde :
now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no
meruaylle though thou commaunde the to thy god, but
I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16
p^e stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not
see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now
to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuer-
theles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20
be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my
strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I
see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth
my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24
charles loueth ²the not moche whan he sendeth the to
me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte
shetes thou haddest been moche better." whan Olyuer
herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28
courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : " O
Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to
brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god
almighty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32
I deffye the ! we haue ouer long pleted." vpon these
wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously
eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

¹ D j, back.

² col. 2.

- naylles, and crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and
 floures been hewen, broken, and flowen to the ground.
 the fyre yssued oute largely, makynge grete bruyt with
 4 the swerdes vpon their harnoys. In this whyle Charles
 was in grete medytacyon and thought that the quarele
 of Olyuer was trewe and iuste and that god ought to
 preserue hym, and whan he thought that Olyuer myght
 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd: ¶ “O
 glorious god, for whome we take payne, I praye the to
 conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I
 swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn
 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chirche
 shal ¹ clerke ne preest be reuested ne enhabyted, but I
 shal do brezne monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & crucy-
 fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd Duc naymes, “Syr kyng, leue
 16 these wordes vayne and ydle, & praye god for Olyuer
 that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys
 whyle perseuered the ij champyons fyghtyng and smyt-
 yng eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth
 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made
 hym falle on hys vysage, and hys hors had be slayn yf
 he had not lepte a syde. and Olyuer was hurte in hys
 body and specyally in the breste and had thenne loste
 24 soo moche of hys blood that he was moche feble,
 whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted
 ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of
 moder.
 28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god whan
 he felte hym hurte : capitulo xj

Their armour is
cut to pieces.

Charles prays for
Oliver's success,

and vows if he is
killed every
church shall be
burnt.

Naymes reproves
him.

Oliver is very
weak from loss of
blood.

- 32 O Lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of
 the grete woundes that he had in hys body took
 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory-
 ous god, cause & begynnyng of al that is aboue & vnder
 the firmamente, which for your owne playser fourmed

Oliver offers up a
prayer,

¹ D ij.

our fyrst fader Adam and^e for ¹hys companye gauest
vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is
conceyued^e, gyuyng^e to them lycence to ete al maner
fryytes reserued^e onely one, of whyche Eue by the 4
recounting the
fall of Adam,
moeuyng of the serpent caused^e Adam to ete, wherfore
they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of
helle many haue ben deceyued^e & dampned : wherof ye
had^e pyte of the perdyceyon of the world^e and^e came for 8
to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious
the annunciation,
vyrgyn marye by thannuncyacion of the holy Aungel
Gabryel, and^e were borne as it pleased^e you. And^e anone
after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12
saunce and^e wyth golde, encence, and^e myrre made to
you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be
the slaughter of
the Innocents,
slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in Ioye per-
manable. And whan ye were in age by you deter- 16
mynd^e ye went in the world^e prechyng^e to your frendes.
Thenne afterward by thenuyous Iewes ye were hanged
the Crucifixion,
on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght
by the Induction of the Iewes percyd your syde ; & 20
whan he byleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your
precious blode he recouerd his syzt fayre & clere &
cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your
frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture : ²the thyrde 24
the Resurrection,
day after aroos and^e took ageyn lyf and^e descended^e in to
helle, And^e took out Adam and^e Eue and al them that
were worthy to haue paradys. And^e the day of your
and the
Ascension.
meruayllous ascencyon ye ascended^e in to heuen in the 28
presence of al your apostles. Thus my god^e, my maker,
as thys is trouthe and^e I byleue it verayly and^e fermly,
be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I
may vaynquyssh^e hym in suche wyse that he may be 32
He crosses him-
self.
saued." And^e this said he blessyd^e hym with his swerde
in makyng the sygne of p^e crosse in the name of god^e
the holy trynitye, and^e smote his hors vpon the hope of

¹ col. 2.² D ij, back.

the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng :

“Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not
fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my
4 god termagaunt I wold gladly here it.” “Now wold
god of heuen,” sayd Olyuer, “that thou were in suche
grace that thou sholdest byleue it also fermly as I doo,
For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I
8 doo Roulland.”

Fierabras laughs
at him,
and asks what his
prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym : “by my god
Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche
grete folye?”

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd
the bawme & ¹dranke therof at hys ease,
and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors
was slayn : capitulo xij

16 **F**yerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of oliuer in
grete Ire sayd to hym : “kepe the wel fro me, for
I deffye the!” “I am redy,” sayd Olyuer, “for
to god I commaunde me.” & so thenne they recountred
20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that
the fyre myzt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of
theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and
the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder

The struggle is
renewed (602) so
fiercely that the
ground shakes.
(607)

24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde
and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the
breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen
torned in hys heed, And had hys face alle chaunged.

Fierabras wounds
Oliver in the
breast.

28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn
marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete
curtosye sayd to hym : “Olyuer, vnderstonde me,
descende doun surely and goo take of the bawme and
32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-
ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

Fierabras again
offers Oliver some
of the hoily balm,

but Oliver refuses
it.

Oliver pierces
Fierabras' thigh.

He drinks some
of the balm,
and is at once
made whole again.

Oliver cuts the
cord by which the
vessels are tied.

He seizes one,
drinks some of
the balm,
and is healed of
his wound.

Oliver throws the
vessels into the
river.

defende the ageynst me and thou shalte recoure newe
strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude
do though ¹he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe
fightyng he wold haue it. And anone came that one ⁴
ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that
Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde
entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the
blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And ⁸
whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme
and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-
ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys
paynym. And the frensshe men that saw this made ¹²
to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue
that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche
emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan
Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme ¹⁶
so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym
and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the
stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by
whyche the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the ²⁰
hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a
lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or
the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and
took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, ²⁴
& anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,
& thought that ²yf by aduenture fyerabras were more
hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles
that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. ²⁸
wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the
barylles & threwe them therin whyche were anone
sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt
Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water ³²
euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were
loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &
by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

¹ D iij.

² col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were
 more worth than al the golde in the world: but I
 promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben
 4 dere solde, For I shal not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy
 heed:” and thys sayeng^r he came ayenst hym, but
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he
 dyd tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the
 8 defence wyth his shelde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer-
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard pat hys helme was
 desmaylled & broken, but he was not hurte, & the
 stroke descended so inpytuously pat he cutte asondre the
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and thenne
 was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblaunte¹ to renne
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd
 16 byfore, but helde hym styлле aboue hys propre custome.

Fierabras reviles
him for doing so,

rushes at him,

and breaks his
helmet,

and kills his
horse. (588)

¶ How Fyerabras and’ Olyuer foughten to-
 gyder afote merveyllously, and’ of the
 prayer that Charles maad’ for Olyuer:

20 capitulo viij

MOche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and wold haue armed
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold not
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.
 ¶ And thenne kyng Charles kneled down to therthe &
 maad his prayer to god that he wolde comforte Olyuer
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed of his hors. whan
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and sayd to
 hym: “o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the
 foule this day ageynst me. In the mornynge thou hast
 32 so moche preysed thy self that thou hast sayd yf v
 knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and

The French wish
to help Oliver,

but Charles for-
bids them.

Oliver reproaches
the Saracen for
killing his horse.
(598)

¹ D iij, back.

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage."

Fierabras declares it was accidental, and offers to give him his own horse, but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps off his horse, and they fight on foot.

Reynier appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Fyerabras answered: "I knowe wel that thou ¹sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende doun of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomelk: And I promyse the thou shalt be well horsed. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abasshed as whan he sawe the at erthe that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the erthe and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede." Olyuer answered: "I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and Iustly wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of hys owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe tweyne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynueing the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto ²other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reynier, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thonour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym ryghe to me in helthe." ¶ In-contynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be ouercome and that my ryght at

¹ col. 2.² D iiij.

- thys tyme be loste and defyled, I make auowe that al
 crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in
 Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &
 4 after kneled down with bothe his knees¹ to the grounde
 & prayed in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for
 our sauacyon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie
 in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious
 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys
 world ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng
 Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in
 paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there
 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one
 onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed
 you to ordeyne: of ²whiche adam ete & was dysobey-
 saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for
 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte & vs also ye were
 contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after
 that the traytour³ Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on
 a friday ye were payned & your handes & feet mortally
 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of
 thornes: and after Longyus smote you in the ryght
 syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he
 had leyd on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe
 24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke
 out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore
 al your apostles ye ascended in to heuen & lefte for
 your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and
 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and to
 make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle
 thys is truthe and that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys
 day be thou in ayde and socoure vnto Olyuer for to
 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed."
 ¶ He thys sayeng & other deuoute wordes in hys
 secrete oratorye Our⁴ lord sente to hym an aungel fro
 heuen whyche sayd to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour

Charles at first
threatens to de-
stroy every church
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays
for Oliver's suc-
cess,

recounting the
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of
our Lord's side
by Longius,

the descent into
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination
of Baptism.

An angel appears

¹ Ed. kueses.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. traycour.

⁴ Ed. Out.

and tells him that Oliver will be the victor.

Fierabras aims a stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges, and wounds the Saracen.

Oliver's sword flies out of his hand.

He tries to recover it, but cannot

through fear of Fierabras.

The French are eager to help Oliver, but Charles will not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente from ¹god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wyne the bataylle; though it be late, but he shal vaynquyshe the paynym." 4
 thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon. Neuertheles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll- 8
 yng to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of mesure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng deuauced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng 12
 angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe were ryzt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in 16
 whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for the payne that he had of smytyng, and he desyryng to smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys suerde flewe a-ferre fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moued 20
 and abashed—and it was no meruaylle—and moche courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And layd hys shelde on hys hede for to preserue it. But not wythstondyng the paynym smote ²hym twyes so 24
 myghtyly that he brake hys shelde in dyuers places and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst not take hys swerde : and moche sodeynlye the frensshe 28
 men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed of his swerde armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that 32
 god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiiij thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

¹ D iiij, back.

² col. 2.

- hym. and notwithstandyng¹ al thys the paynym dyd
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I haue opteyned² vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now
 wel that thou art ynough vaynquysshed sythe that thou
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the
 tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for t.
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued &
 the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god
 12 ful of bounte, & ¹I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed. Hyr name is
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd to
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for
 god forbede that euer I shold be of entencion to forsake
 20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed me, and his
 holy sacrements which haue been establysshed for my²
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd to
 hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete
 28 thou³ mayst wel auauunte the. For neuer was I of
 persone so trauailled ne greued as I am of the. ¶ Thou
 oughtest wel to be praysed. I am contente that thou
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute com-
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a
 woman." Olyuer answerd: "Paynym, I can not say
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and
 bounte, but for the⁴ valewe of x thousand marke of

Fierabras mocks
at Oliver,

and offers, if he
will renounce
Christianity, to

give him his sister
Floripas in mar-
riage.

Oliver says, "God
forbid!"

Fierabras declares
he never met any
one so obstinate.

Fierabras then
offers to let him
pick up his sword,

¹ D v.

² Ed. fo rmy.

³ Ed. thon.

⁴ col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytte & frendshyp & thenne 4 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wyll of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wyne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thyng shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous & glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortely thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he will win it back in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was vanquysshed by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes of fyerabras : capitulo viiij 16

WHan Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle. For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he myght by Iuste warre conquere it, wherfore the paynym 20 dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no meruayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24 was broken in two parties. but as it playsted to god he looked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28 quickely and took one of the swerdes whych was named baptesme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32 he was nyghe hym he began to say : "O kyng of

Fierabras comes against Oliver,

who, looking round in fear,

sees the Saracen's horse, on which are two swords.

He runs and seizes one, Baptism,

Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pour-
ueyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffied you.”

and defies
Fierabras.

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so
speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: “O
baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by ony
8 mans that is lyuyng.” And after behelde olyuer sayeng:

“By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne
swerde and late me ¹haue myn and thenne late vs fyght

who asks him to
give up Baptism,
and take his own
sword in ex-
change,

12 as we haue begonne.” “by my hede,” sayd Olyuer,
“that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make
ony pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys swerde
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long

but Oliver refuses,

16 haue we sermoned.” Thys sayeng & other thynges
Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote
hym fyrst, but he myzt not attayne hym on the hede
but that he recountred first the shelde of the paynym,

20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl that the half
flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that
stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne

and with a blow
breaks the shield
of the Saracen.

24 olyuer blessyd hym that had forged that swerde and so
wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they
were in partye descouered of theyr helmes. And whan

They both lose
their helmets.

Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers
28 and courageous he sayd: “O lord god of heuen, maker
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful
of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in
his power and yf he wold be baptysed Rolland and I

Oliver is astonish-
ed at the appear-
ance of Fierabras,
and prays for his
conversion.

32 shold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie
moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone
2 that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

¹ col. 2.

² D vj.

enhaunced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere :
 "Olyuer, leue suche wordes : telle me yf thou wylt
 fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd
 olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4
 ranne vpon hym : and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon
 his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in
 pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he
 cut it not of : wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8
 put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in
 thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his
 swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.
 ¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þe stroke come threwe 12
 hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred,
 and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al
 troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge
 oute of the swerdes and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16
 and thus in smytyng fyerabras sayd in this manere :
 "now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde
 of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that
 anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20
 comen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd : "Ihesus is wel
 myghty ¹for to shewe hys puyssaunce. But anone thou
 shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not
 mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalte be 24
 deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon
 came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton
 on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al
 that the swerde araught it share and passed thorough, & 28
 thenne he sayd to olyuer : "I swere to the by my god
 that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal
 charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer
 ansuerd : "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32
 proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede
 or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I
 haue alwaye desyred !" And therupon eche smote

¹ col. 2.

Fierabras smites
Oliver on his
shield,
and breaks it in
pieces.

Oliver cuts the
Saracen on his
shield,

and nearly stuns
him.

They abuse each
other. (701)

Fierabras wounds
Oliver (732) and

declares his time
has now come.

other so merueyllously that the bodyes of them bothe
 swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote
 olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came
 4 to the flessch, and yf god had not wrought he had be
 slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged
 came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe
 hys shelde so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme
 8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse
 & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote ¹fyerabras
 in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse
 that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel
 12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled
 of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche
 manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his
 bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his
 16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe
 foughten.

Oliver aims a
 blow at Fierabras;
 who, raising his
 shield too high,
 leaves his side
 uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his
 sword in between
 the ribs,

so that the Sara-
 cen's bowels al-
 most fall out. (748)

¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-
 leued' in god', and' how he was borne by
 20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'
 of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

After that the Paynym was smyton and hurte
 mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he
 24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the
 vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he
 had knowleche of the errour of the paynims and lyfte
 vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy
 28 trynity and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after
 loked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer
 & valyaunt knyght, in thonour of god on whome thou
 byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy
 32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptysed &
 yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding
 himself vanquish-
 ed begs for mercy,

(753) promising
 to become a
 christian,

and to be bap-
 tised, (755)

¹ D vj, back.

² col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubtē. For I shāl byleue in
 and to give up the the crysten fayth & shāl yelde the relyques for whyche
 sacred relics. (763) ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.
 And I swere to the that yf, by thy defaute I dye sarasyn 4
 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou
 take not me in to thy garde I shāl lose my blood.
 Thou shālt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in
 Oliver takes pity the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8
 on him, (770) moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore
 wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a
 and binds up his tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche
 wounds. (774) wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12
 Fierabras asks to paynym prayed hym that it myght plesse hym to bere
 be carried away, hym away For hym self myght not goo. but whan
 (776) Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was
 not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16
 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and
 redoubtē Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me
 to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,
 and bids him fetch for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20
 his horse, (788) theron and come as nyghe to ¹me as thou may and yf I
 and take him on may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst
 it. lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now
 hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and 24
 depeesse the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in
 He warns him of an ambush of the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand
 50,000 Saracens in the wood close by. men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them
 (796) that none shold moeue tyl I were retorned fro the 28
 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al
 afrayed and abashed for fere, but not wythstondyng
 he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesse you I am
 contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32
 Oliver lifts him on & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And
 to the horse. (809) sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the
 subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of
 nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym
 maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand
 4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote
 the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy
 that he myzt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to
 hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.
 And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon¹dydyer,
 Guyllam the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard
 of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy,
 12 Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And
 semblably Reynier of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not.
 Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore
 thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors
 16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge
 the other, For it semed as it had be thonder and
 tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a
 grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle
 20 enuenuymed wyth the blood of a crapauld and was
 ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al
 amoeued and abasshed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys
 manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may
 24 no farther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously
 sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes
 be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may
 attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte."
 Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: ² "O
 noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd
 me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be
 32 reputed noblesse determyned whan ³I am youres and
 ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I
 am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn
 marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

The Saracens
break out of the
ambush. (812)

Oliver spurs his
horse, but in vain.

Roland and others
rush out to his
help.

Oliver being hard
pressed,
tells Fierabras he
must set him on
the ground.

Fierabras begs
him not to leave
him.

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* veys.

³ D vij, back.

Oliver promises
not to desert him,

and arms himself
in Fierabras'
armour. (868)

Brillant charges
at and wounds
him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras
down (825), and
tries to escape,

but seeing it is in
vain,
utters a prayer,

draws his sword,
and turns to meet
the Saracens. (833)

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to
Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed
to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou
oughtest lytel to be preysed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4
erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I auowe to god
and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I
shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende
the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste 8
therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the
sarasyn and wyth suche as he myzt haue he armed
hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an
hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12
haultclere, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. &
herupon came anone brillant wyth his faus darte &
atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke
so that the dart brake. thenne said fyerabras: "Syr 16
Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte.
late me descende doun and laye me a-parte out of the
waye to thende that I be not defoulled of these sara-
syns, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20
grete compassyon & layed Fyerabras in the shadowe of
a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold
haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns
and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24
knowest myn entencion. I requyre the to gyue me
grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme
that for the exaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rol-
land my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28
haultclere and came in to the waye, & the first that he
recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was
there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefted hym to
the breste and [he] fyl doun dede. & Olyuer was abylded 32
& delyuer, and took fro hym hys shelde whyche was al
newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys,
& also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

the myscreauntes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retorning¹
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys
 to-gydre : " by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou
 8 shalt not escape vs ; kepe the wel ¹for by vs thou shalt
 deye !" And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarsyns smote on
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of ²shotte
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he
 16 had goten, and helde fast haultelere whyche was alle
 hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome
 he raught fyl down and was slayn. It is not redde in
 any book that euer any man so hurt as he was bare hym
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

He slays Clargys,
and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain
under him. (891)

He defends him-
self bravely.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteous-
 ly, & myght not be socoured' by the
 Frensshe men : ca. xvj ³

24 **O**lyuer was a[l]lone on fote emonge the sarasyns
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-
 uayllous : but it is not a thyng possyble that he
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with
 28 swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in ⁴moo than xxx
 places : & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyth
 foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in
 32 his body meruailously. Wherfore by veray force &
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

His shield is
broken, (896)
his coat of mail
cut to pieces.

He is overpower-
ed, bound, &
blindfolded. (906)

¹ D vijj. ² Ed. and. ³ Ed. xvij. ⁴ col. 2.

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comforte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas- 8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembreth not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe. am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes making the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes¹ straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Theȝne vpon thys in 20 especyal came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rycharde Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empossed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynyns that conduyed Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moyen people & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

He cries on
Charles for help,
(912)

and on Roland.
(913)

Maradas mocks
him. (914)

Roland and the
other douzperes
charge the Sara-
cens: (932)

each kills a Sara-
cen. (945)

Guyllam, Gual-
tier, and others
are slain (968),
and

- dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dyligently to theyr horses & rode aweye wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus
 4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed: "saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knyghtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede awaye the barons ¹neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the
 8 Frensshe men herde Charles thus moeued as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente down of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde durandall drawen for tauenge hym fyersly,
 12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
 16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude of the paynmys he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
 20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and wery. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
 24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynmys
 28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And therefore by force they must leue the felde in ryzt grete ²dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they retorned.
- The second' partye of the second' book conteyneth xviij chapytres & speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geoffrey taken prisoners. (973)

The French try to rescue them. (982)

Roland in the front.

They chace them for more than five miles,

till night came on, (1013)

when they were compelled to turn back. (1020)

¹ col. 2.

² E j.

¶ How Fyerabras was founzen by Charles,
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his
wonde : ca. primo

On his way back
to the camp
Charles finds
Fierabras lying
under a tree.
(1037)
He reproaches
him.

After that charles knew that he myght not haue 4
ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was
thezne to them greuous ; & also in retornynge they
fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshynge, to whom þe 8
kyng said : O vnhappy paynym, I ouzt wel to hate the
for by the been my men prysonners and loste. thou hast
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16
In thonour of ¹god I crye the mercy & pardone me.
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of
my woundes I shal enhaunce to my power the crysten
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maad crysten ; and by 24
my moyan the holy sepulcre & the holy reliques shal
be delyuerd, for whome ye take grete payne and
trauayle. And also I make an oth to you by god in
whom I now byleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28
Olyuer that noble knyght whiche is taken prysonner
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be
borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons. and whan they

Fierabras begs for
mercy, (1042)

promises to be-
come Christian,
(1046)

and to give up the
holy relics. (1056)

Charles has pity
on him and causes
him to be carried
to the camp.
(1067)

saw hym so hugely membred^t they al were abasshed of
 his gretenes and^t largenes, for whan he was vnarmed^t he
 was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And
 4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and^t honour ¹to
 Olyuer that had^t foughten & ouercomen suche a man ;
 and as he was vnclothed^t partye of hys woundes opened^t
 and^t began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl down
 8 a-swoune, & rolland^t anone lyfte hym vp. And in al
 haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]che-
 bysshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous
 of this that the paynym shold^t be crystend^t. & after that
 12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another
 name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued^t he
 was called^t Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a
 bedde honourable. And^t at the laste ende of hys dayes
 16 he was a saynt and^t god^t shewed^t for hym myracles, and
 is now called^t Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne
 anone charles made hym to be vysyted^t by his medycynes
 & surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and
 20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed
 ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer
 hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng^t.
 In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was
 24 present & sayd^t to fyerabras : “yf now olyuer & the
 other barons were here present tofore the we shold^t wel
 be contente.” And charles was thenne al pencyf and
 heuy moche thynkyng^t vpon hys ba²-rons prysoners, but
 28 he maa^t no more semblaunte.

All the French
admire his size
and figure. (1076)

He is baptised
and named
Floren. (1087)

After his death he
became a Saint.

Charles orders his
own physicians
to attend to him.
(1092)

They assure him
that Fierabras
will be well in
2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyuer & his felowes were presented^t
 to ballant thadmyral and^t cruelly passyoned
 in pryson : capitulo ij

32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce
 tofore named for prysoners they taryed^t not but
 ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named

The Saracens
carry Oliver
and the other
prisoners to
Algreimore. (1114)

¹ E j, back.

² col. 2.

Balan enquires
what tidings they
bring. (1124)

Brillant tells
him of their
defeat, (1129)

and of Oliver's
victory over
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments
over his son,
(1134)

and threatens to
smash his gods.

Agrymore; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they
sowned and blewe vp trumpes makynge grete bruyt.
whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them
he came vnto them & fonde there brillant of mommyer, 4
to whome he sayd: "O brillant my frende, telle to vs of
your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and
affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so
moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they 8
dyscomfyted?" Brillant sayd to hym: "O syradmyral,
the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse,
and of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng
we haue been almoost defeated and dyscomfyted. For 12
of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras
your sone is with hym vaynquysshed by one of his
barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vayn-
quysshed & dyscomfyted in loyal batayl without doying 16
ony treson." ¹whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to
therthe al in a traunse, And or he came ageyn to hys
mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had
of hys sone. and whan he was releued he cryed wyth an 20
hye voys: "O dolaunt vnhappy that I am! ha! poure
caytyf! what shal bycome of me? O Fyerabras, my
ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone?
Fro whens cometh thys trespaas? wherfore were thou 24
taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had re-
proche? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me
of the! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth: I
had moche leuer that he were dysmembred and put to 28
deth:" & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the
grounde and cryed: "O brillant of mommyere, what is
betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe
bruchart? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and captayn 32
of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute
the brayne of Mahomet the god whiche hath promysed
to me so moche good, to whome I haue gyuen my self
and yolden." Thus sayenge alle in a rage he tormented

hym self greuously vpon the grounde.¹ And whan
 thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-
 maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyzt that hath
 4 vaynquys.²shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd:
 "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde
 knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel
 formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen
 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye
 you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be
 dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that
 he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr
 12 comferte, begonне to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche
 vnderstode it sawe them waylle he recomforted them
 sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not
 what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe
 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myzt know that we be of
 the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,
 for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal
 deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as
 20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frensshe mer-
 prysonners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he
 counceyllled them. after that thadmyral had comanded
 them to come tofore hym the paynymys vnarmed them
 24 & bonde faste theyr hondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,
 wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt:
 & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "pou
 frenssh man, beware that pou³lye not but say to me the
 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer
 ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto
 a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne &
 cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,
 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:
 & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure
 knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprysed payne to
 serue our kyng, by cause pat by our seruyce we myzt
 be auaunced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires
 which of the
 French knights
 overcame Fiera-
 bras. (1144)

Bruillant points
 out Oliver. (1146)

Oliver warns his
 companions not
 to tell their
 names. (1155)

Balan demands
 Oliver's name.
 (1166)

Oliver answers,
 "Eugynes, the
 son of a poor
 yeoman," (1168)

and says that all
 his companions
 are poor knights.
 (1171)

¹ *En*. groude.

² col. 2.

³ E ij, back.

Balan is vexed at this, (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1184)

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyauntest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyn of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depresshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartes wel sharned wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” thenne aroos brullant & sayd: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seynorye ne your lor¹des be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euydently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wold yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folylly for to come it to hys kepyng. 28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

AFTER that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

- greuous pry¹son brutamont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to auale down in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strait in the grounde
4 that no lyzt myght be seen: in the which were put & nourysshed serpentes, crapauldes, and other beestes venemous and detestable; in whyche place al stenche was comprysed. and there passed a streme of the salte
8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld them & shet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe
12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frezssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys
16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in especyal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessaryte of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes
20 opened: for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl down a swoune & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned
24 seeyng that the water grewe alwaye. ²ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myzt not helpe hym. & whan
28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled & sayd: "o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye? knowe ye where I am? thynke ye what I make?
32 knowe ye my sorowe? ye shal neuer see me." this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym: "Syr oliuer, wayle nomore: vnto suche a knyght as ye be. it apperteyneth

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

¹ E iij.

² col. 2.

not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self &
 traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we
 and wishes he had that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good
 his sword, swerde in his hande onely: for I make a vowe to god 4
 and could get at the Saracens. that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed
 I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe
 Floripas hears their cries and groans. (1202) men beyng' on these pylers of marble afore sayd in
 suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the syster 8
 of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had
 grete compassyon of þ^e complayntes that Olyuer made.
 She is young and well made: this douzter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed
 with lips like a rose in May: of body; resonable of lengthe, ¹whyte & rody as rose in 12
 maye. hyr heyre was shynying as the fyne golde, & hir
 vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe: and hyr chere
 her eyes like a falcon's: lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng
 lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16
 her nose strait whiche was wel semely; the ij browes
 whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe;
 hyr chekys rounde, whyte as the flour de lys, a lytel
 her mouth small: tyssued with reed; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20
 roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne
 al wel proporcyoned to the remenaunte of the hede:
 with litel sholdres strait & egalle: & tofore aboue the
 her shoulders straight, and her gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facyon of ij 24
 breasts like two apples. apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel mon-
 tain. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple
 meruayllously ryche fylled & pouldred with sterres of
 fyn golde, whiche was made of one of the fayrre, & it 28
 was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght
 neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes
 So fair is she that a sight of her would satisfy a man who had
 fasted 3 or 4 days. was so fayre wyth hyr abyllments that yf a persone
 had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32
 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer
 she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos
 of a woman of the fayr²rye (there as Iason gate the

¹ E iij, back.² col. 2.

- fliese of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye
 almoost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaulte
 4 of this damoyssel eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe
 men in pryson & in especyal of Olyuer of whome she
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle
 where as the paynyms were moche desolate for fyerabras
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche
 were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded
 12 tydynges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was
 taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thenne was al the
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for brutamont
 & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame,"
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a
 nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyerabras
 your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete
 24 valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer
 was knowen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd
 in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had enuye
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke
 28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd:
 "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them
 by cause of the fylthe and dyschoneste of the place: it
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your
 fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes
 by a woman I have knowen somme shamed & deceyued."

Floripas enters
 her father's hall,

and is told of her
 brother's capture.

She asks Brutamont who the
 prisoners are.
 (1216)
 He tells her. (1219)

Floripas wishes to
 see and speak with
 them, (1226)

but Brutamont
 refuses to open
 the door. (1228)

Floripas is enraged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on the head and kills him, (1251) and throws him into the dungeon. (1257)

Floripas opens the door,

and asks the prisoners who they are. (1266)

Oliver answers her. (1268)

Floripas offers to release them if they will promise to do what she wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises. (1284)

whan floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro
 hyr self and sayd to hym : " O euyl glouton despytous,
 oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse
 the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4
 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she
 made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont
 gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seynge the porter wyth-
 stonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage pat 8
 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl
 down & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout
 knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the
 frensshe ¹men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12
 abasshed whan they herd hym, wenyng to them that it
 had be the deuyl which wold haue tempted & deceyued
 them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche &
 dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16
 to see the prysonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd
 to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how
 ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer
 ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20
 men of charlemayns, & haue ben brougt hyther to thad-
 myral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel
 prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to
 be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24
 curtoys florypes, not-withstandyng pat she was not
 crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon
 and said to them : " I promyse you that I shal put you
 out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28
 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer
 ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye
 shal fynde vs all suche by effecte as ye shal desyre, &
 faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32
 shal be. & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as
 longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so pat we be
 furnysshed of armes & been ²aboue for to meddle wyth

¹ col. 2.

² E iij, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may anaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be style than folysshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoyssel, I shal saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

8 empessed singeth gladly for to forge the payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wylle. But the lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

Floripas compliments Gerard. (1302)

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillain
20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

1 ¶ How the frensshe men were put oute² of
24 pryson and were vysyted by the noble mayde Floripes and of the beaulte of hyr chaumbre: capitulo iiiij

28 **W**Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners she called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a staffe bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it down. And whan
the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after.

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir. (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window. (1369)

ynough. and after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof thentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4
 About the chyef yate was made by grete scyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted of all fygures and lykenesse by meruayllous facyon: & after somme scriptures the sone of mathusale dyd do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned wyth the see, and in one of the quarters ¹was a gardyn ¹²pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and good helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16
 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel ²⁰these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reyner of genes and broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyra- ²⁴bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed & honoured. And there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyndmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god ²⁸mahomet that he curse me yf I euer ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned hyr Ire ayenst ³²hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and called her varlet whyche cam to ²hyr prestly and threwe

¹ E v.

² col. 2.

- the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tombled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr :
- 4 ¶ “Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombrede ne in daunger by the.” and herof the barons made grete Loye ;
- 8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssede them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayd to hym : “Syr Olyuer, ne doubte ye not for
- 12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe :” & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel : & anone as oliuer had vsede it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre
- 16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourueyed of al good vytaylle and delycious metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after
- 20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at theyr ease ; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of sylke & golde broudred. & thenne
- 24 Floripes sayd : “lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were
- 28 knowen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abashed : ye knowe
- 32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you.” and after the sayd Florypes sayd : “lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce² whome I haue longe tyme loued : he is named guy of

The French knights are delighted. (1374)

Floripas sees the blood from Oliver's wound, (1380)

and heals him with a draught. (1389)

The knights are supplied with food, baths, and clothes. (1395)

Floripas reminds them of what she has done for them. (1396)

Floripas tells them she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (1411)

¹ E v, back.

² *Ed.* frannee.

whom she had
seen first at Rome
with Lucifer,
(1414) and over-
came him.

For his sake she is
willing to become
a Christian. (1423)

Gerard says they
will do anything
if she will give
them arms.

Floripas gives
them a damsel
a-piece.

All this was very
noble of Floripas,
but shows the
natural curiosity
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme when I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubteð emonge the Paynymys & the sayð guy of bourgoyne Iusteden togyder, but the sayð guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue ¹hym not to husbond I shal neuer marye. And for the loue of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frensshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wylle of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the frensshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wylle of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken ²oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorie of theyr enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore 8 they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome she had in loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus- 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue in thys damoyssel was fyxed and comprysed of longe affectyon, the which was cause of sauynge of the prysoners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights had to thank her love for Guy for their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thadmyral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myzt not slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he had for ¹his sone, whan he myght no lenger endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym : "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me ! 24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone, for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe ? yf I haue none other tydynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melancolye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo 28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner, & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : "Fayre neuewe rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the

Reyner is in great grief for his son, (1423)

and says he must go and find him. (1431)

Charles tells Roland that he must go to Balan, the next morning,

¹ e vj, col. 2.

and demand from
him the relics and
the release of his
prisoners. (1436)

Roland remon-
strates,

as also does
Naymes. (1446)

Charles says
Naymes shall go
too. (1452)

Basyn protests,
and Charles orders
him to go also,
(1458)
and likewise
Terry, (1472)

Ogier, (1480)

Richard of Nor-
mandy, (1460)

and Guy of Bur-
gundy, (1488)

the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for
which I haue taken grete payne : And after aske of
hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf
he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4
drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the necke,
his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Rol-
land answerd : " Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy
on me ! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8
neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche
sayd : " syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Rolland
is your neuewe ; ye knowe of what ¹ valewe he is of. yf
he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." " And I 12
assure you," sayd Charles, " that ye shal goo wyth hym,
and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys
sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym :
" & how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes ? I am 16
certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal
not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his
heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and
so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20
lyke to thother ; therefore he was ordeyned to goo also.
Ogyer the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo ;
and therfore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp.
Rychard of Normandy came to the emperour and 24
sayd : " Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo
pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllingly ye wyl make
them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue
lost them." " by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28
charles, " ye shal goo wyth the other ; and thenne shal
ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral
whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde guy
of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym : " come to me : ye are my 32
cosyn, and of my next parentage ; ye shall be the seuenth
for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. ² And
ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

¹ e vj, back.

² e vj, back, col. 2.

- that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he
- 4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym, and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer
- 8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper. And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in
- 12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement. We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne
- 16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In thonour of god that it be pardonned to vs." with these wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons:
- 20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."
- And so they departed on theyr waye hastely, transport-
- 24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

Guy begs off, but in vain.

In the morning the messengers appear before Charles, (1499)

who commends them to God,

and so they depart. (1503)

- ¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras, which were recountred' by the peres of
- 28 fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

- IN aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sarasyns for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys
- 32 commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral,

Balan calls a council. (1512)

Maradas asks

why they have
been called toge-
ther. (1516)

Balan tells them
that they must go
the next morning
to Mormyonde,
(1522)

and demand from
Charles the sur-
render of Fiera-
bras, and homage
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-
tests, but says
they will go.
(1538)

They arm them-
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherefore hast thou sente for vs ?" ballant answerd and
sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þ^e trouth. Charle-
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4
londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I
counceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde ¹hym,
olde dotard, that he byleue in mahoun our god wyth- 12
oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16
yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym
wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by
aduenture ye fynde in your waye ony crysten man, smyte
of his heed wythout ony mercy : " whan thadmyral had 20
sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24
membred. but byleue ye not that I say thys for coward-
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I
wyl accomplysshe it. For I haue suche courage, that yf
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28
put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I
haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel
as Maradas ; wherefore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32
wente to horse-backe, wel arme^d, & grete speres in theyr
hondes, with penouns ²reysed puyssauntly, and Iour-
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

¹ e vij, col. 2.

² e vij, back.

- passed the brydge of mantryble ; & assone as they myght,
 they passed ouer. And the frensshe men afore named After they had
 came and recountred those sarasyns. And fyrst, duc Naymes sees them
 4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes : " O lord coming, (1555)
 god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made ! and is frightened.
 See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete
 puyssaunce ? aduyse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland
 8 sayd : " my lordes, ne doubtte ye noo thyng. Beholde, Roland advises
 and see them ; they be not passyng' xx or xxx ; late vs them to fight.
 ryde straye to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon, (1563)
 and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partye of
 12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed, Maradas chal-
 whyche went and sayd to the frensshe men : " how be lenges them, (1568)
 ye so Infortunat and cursed to come and mete wyth vs,
 and ye be cristen ?" Duke Naymes ansuerd : " what
 16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynnously and ouer
 folysshly : we be men longyng to þ^e redoubted emperour
 Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant
 thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym : " ye be in daunger : and asks if any of
 20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse ?" Naymes them will fight
 ansuerd : " we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu him. (1576)
 our maker." maradas said : " which ¹ of you dare Iuste
 ayenst me ?" " I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas
 24 sayd : " thou art moche presumptuous ; For yf I had Naymes offers to
 suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde² them al wyth do so, (1577)
 my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout but Maradas
 gretely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes : mocks at him,
 28 " herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you and says he is too
 moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle ; and after old. (1579)
 I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland
 had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after
 32 sayd to Maradas : " thou hast folyly spoken and thought
 thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou
 shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I
 deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

¹ e vij, back, co^l. 2.² Orig. confonnde.

charges at him,
(1589)

and cuts him
down with
Durandal. (1605)

The other Sara-
cens try to avenge
his death,

but are all slain
save one, (1624)

who escaped and
carried the news
to Balan. (1627)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recountred
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was
grete meruayle that bothe were not dede with þ^e stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4
swerdes they smote the helmes rychely wrought.
Rolland was so furyous, that he¹ helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkled and
departed it; & after by grete force recouerd hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and clefted it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma²radas fyl down to therthe. whan the
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loked eche on other as 12
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeance on the
frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer meruaylously.
And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the
paynymys were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ranne
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32
thadmyral vnder³stode thys, he was almoost dede for
sorowe of the deth o^f hys kynges aforesayd.

¹ *Orig.* he he.

² e viij.

³ e viij, col. 2

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;
 of the trybute there payed' for to passe
 ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the
 4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :
 capitulo vij

8 **W**Han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth
 the sarasyns, they were al trauaylled and wery,
 and wente and rested them in a medowe al
 grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd the duc
 naymes : " my lordes, I counceylle you that we retorne
 to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon ; & I wote
 12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe
 how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd
 and sayd : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornyng ?
 Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal
 16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to
 retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-
 myral, how someuer it be. and late vs do one thyng
 wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one
 20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."
 Naymes sayd to hym : " syr 'rolland, it semeth that
 ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be
 anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-
 24 yon of Rolland ; and so eche of them toke an hede, and
 rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrst
 that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche
 was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes :
 28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is
 Aygremore, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogyer
 the danoys sayd : " vs byhoueth fyrst to passe by thys
 brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx
 32 arches of marble wel spacyous & brode, whyche been
 soulded wyth leed and cymment, & with grete barres of
 yron : vpon² whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest themselves, and debate what to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes to return, (1653)

but Roland will not agree,

and suggests each should take the head of one of the Saracen kings and present them to Balan, (1662)

to which they all agree.

Ogyer describes the bridge of Mantryble. (1678)

¹ e viij, back.

² *Orig.* wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knights can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafre by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete chaynes of yron. And aboute on hye is an egle of golde moche replendysshante and shynynge lyke the sonne, that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryuer that passeth vnder is named fla¹got, whyche is bynethe the arche by mesure xv foot, and renneth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye 12 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafre, one of the moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours," sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care 20 not for passynge ouer the brydge, For I swere to you that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, & that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what someuer he be. 24 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the porter yf he come tofore me, what someuer shal happe." Duc naymes of bauyere repyrased hym: "Rolland, ye speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28 receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth oute daunger." whan the freysshe men came tofore the 32 brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes & other glayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

¹ e viij, back, col. 2.

² f j.

duc naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after
 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wylt thou goo?" Naymes answered: "I shal say you the trouthe. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath
 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuertheles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that
 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of
 16 the brydge tofore al thyng." Duc Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes,
 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C fawcons melwed, an C palfroyes in good poynte & rested, and for euery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must haue ii[ij] sommyers charged
 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other excusacyon." duc Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstandyng
 28 that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had deuysed: & answered to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter,
 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge cometh after vs, and harnois more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galafre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

Galafre believes
him and lets them
pass. (1755)

Roland meets a
Saracen,

and throws him
over into the
river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes
him.

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other Jewellys noble and ryche: take of them as it shalle please your wylle." ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4 said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge doun, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd: "In trouthe, syr Duc Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8 we passe thys brydge." and rolland came ¹ behynde alle the other; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage: "A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12 thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng happe wel," and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted doun from hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16 ryuer. ¶ Duc Naymes looked behynde hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd: "lord god of heuen, I trowe the deuyll is in the body of Roulland! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god 20 helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and vylaynsly deye." For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to gouerne² hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24 enemye where he myzt fynde hym.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the
Admyrall, and' how they dyd' theyr
message: capitulo viii 28

The French
knights enter into
Aigremore. (1768)

THe barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in ³ good ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32 noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

¹ f j, back. ² *Orig.* gruerne. ³ f j, back, col. 2.

other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and
buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn
strangled; and they recountred a sarasyn whome they
4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym
to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe. and
thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre
lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye
8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold
by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes sayd to hym
"Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute
hauyng attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace,
12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."
And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore
the admyral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes
of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of
16 alle the world, to whom onely ouzt to be gyuen creaunce
entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng
charlemayn, puyssaunt, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-
land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and
20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes
of the feet, the Admyral¹ here present, as moche as
tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyed be-
yonde þ^e bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons
24 on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses
and do to vs vylonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,
they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ Whan the Admy-
ral vnderstode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe
28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came
the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,
and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere
syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen
32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn
your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylonnye."
The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys
tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc², that

A Saracen shows
them the way to
Balan. (1772)

Naymes says he
will deliver the
message. (1776)

They present
themselves before
the Emir.

Naymes begins
his message by
cursing Balan and
his men.

Balan is enraged.

The Saracen king,
which had
escaped,
tells him who the
French knights
are.

¹ f ij.

² Ed. dnc.

- be shold^d fynysshe hys message. And the duc ansuerd
that he so do wold^d gladly, and^d sayd^d in thys manere :
- Naymes delivers
the message,
demanding the
sacred relics,
(1808)
- “The grete noble kyng^r of Fraunce commaundeth the
that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4
blessyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned^d wyth, and^d the other
relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and^d
payne ; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in
pryson folysshly. and^d yf thou do not as I haue to the 8
deuysed^d, Charles shal make the ¹to be hanged^d by the
necke on a gybet and^d strangled vylaynously.” Thad-
myral ballant, replenysshed^d of an entencyon moche
- and the release of
the prisoners.
(1810)
- oultrageous, sayd^d to Naymes the duc : “Thou hast 12
gretely defouled^d me by oultrage, and^d I haue wyllngly
herde the. Goo forth and^d sytte down by yonde pyler,
& these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde.
Mahomet my god^d, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16
gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see
thy hede flee fro thy sholdres.” The duc Naymes
ansuerd : “yf it playse god^d my maker, & his blessyd
moder, þou shalt haue made a lesyng.” After hym 20
spake Rychard^d duc of Normandye, & said : “vnder-
stonde me, syr admyral ! Charles the kyng, with his
berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the
baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24
sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puy-
saunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes,
whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf
thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28
the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þ^e, & shal neuer
haue mercy on the.” Thadmyral ballant supposed^d to
haue knowen hym, & sayd^d thus : “mahomet, in whom
I byleue, curse the ! thou resembllest wel Rychard of 32
normandye, whych slewe my ²vncle corsuble. Now
wold^d Mahoun the god^d that he were here ! he shold^d
neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and^d sytte down
- Balan in a rage
- bids him stand
aside, (1826)
- swearing that he
will have him put
to death.
- Richard of Nor-
mandy delivers
the message (1846)
to the same effect.
- Balan recognizes
and curses him.
(1860)
- and bids him
stand aside with
Naymes.

¹ f ij, col. 2.² f ij, back.

- by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr
 thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore
 ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,
 4 aboue al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth
 the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been
 requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle
 the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went
 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, duc
 of Ardayne, & dyssymyled his chyere & countenance
 of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-
 garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed
 12 that he had ben a deuyll. And after, thyerry sayd:
 "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.
 Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth
 the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou
 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys
 barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou
 sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the
 vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-
 20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what
 man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe¹ is
 he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preysed &
 vaunted?" Thenne the duc Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle
 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &
 hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that
 yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone
 he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on
 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an
 olde hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent
 tho ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &
 after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth
 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.
 yf I were now in thy wylle and subgectyon, as thou
 arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth
 me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

After him Basyn
repeats the mes-
sage, (1864)

and after him
Terry of Ardane,
(1874)

at whose appear-
ance Balan is
frightened. (1888)

He asks Terry to
describe Charles
to him. (1892)

Terry tells him
that Charles is
noble and brave,

and cares no more
for Balan than for
a dead dog or a
rotten apple.

Balan laughs

¹ f ij, back, col. 2.

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely. (1806)

Balan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged. (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

I shold^d doo hange the by the necke, and^d strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght." ¶ "Vassal," sayd^d the Admyrall, "thou hast sayd^d grete folye. For by Mahommet my god^d, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4 the, as thou hast sayd^d of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes." ¶ Thenne after hym came the good^d Ogyer the danoys tofore hym, and^d sayd^d: "O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche¹ wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and^d yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and^d doo the deye shamefully." 12 Thadmyral, beynge al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland^d the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doynge^t to hym ony reuerence, and^d sayd^d to hym: "Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng^t and^d Emperour redoubted^d, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god^d Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world^d, & in the glorious vyrgyn marie his moder; and^d 20 do the to be baptyse^d, and^d thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and^d atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred^d and^d delyuerd hole and^d in good^d poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I haue sayd to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged^d as a theef." Thadmyral sayd to hym: "thou hast rebuked^d and^d blamed^d me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged^d & strangled^d." Thenne Roulland^d answerd: "for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, 2For I doubte the 32 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned^d."

¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and^d sayd to hym in thys manere: "Charles

¹ f iij.

² f iij, col. 2.

- commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and repeats the
and that thou restore the relyques and hys barons ; and message,
thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man : and yf thou wylt
4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god Ihesu
Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute endeanð wythoute
begynnynge. And yf thou byleuest my counceyl, thou
mayst be in his grace. And lo ! what thou shalt do : take
8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo
in thy sherte, and bere on thy body a sadel of an hors,
and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles,
and humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to
12 god thy maker almyghty, for thyn errors and oultrages.
¶ And crye hym mercy in the honour of god almyghty ;
and yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd, he shal make the
be hanged, brente, or drowned, and shamefully¹ to dye.”
16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned and araged
than he had been tofore, and sent anone for Brullant de
Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and for the
other that were of hys² counceyl, and demaunded theyr
20 aduys and counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd.
Anone sortybrant sayd to hym : “ Syr admyral, I
counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred and
slayn, and after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe
24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is
pensyf : yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.
¶ After ye shal descende in to fraunce, & doo you be
crowned there as kyng.” “ by mahoun,” sayd ballant,
28 “ ye haue wel sayd. Now be it doon after your deuyse :
goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr
felowes, for to do after the enterpryse.” And thus as I
haue sayd, Thadmyral was of entencion to make of the
32 frenshe men aforesayd, after that is tofore deuysed.

advising Balan to
go humbly to
Charles

and beg for
mercy. (1940)

Balan is greatly
enraged,

and holds a council
to consider what
is to be done with
the messengers.
(1956)

Sortibrant advises
their immediate
execution, (1961)

to which Balan
agrees.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the
frenshe men were saued, and lodged to-

¹ *Orig.* shamefluy.

² f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears and asks her father who the French knights are. (1977)

Floripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4
chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there a¹parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8 wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say 12 to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel deserued it. And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, 16
"ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon. Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other." "good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne, and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20 tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysonners. 24

Balan tells her,

and asks her advice what he is to do with them. (1986)

"Cut off their heads, and burn them," says Floripas.

Balan assents, and proposes to do so at once,

but Floripas says it is dinner-time,

and asks for them to be given into her charge. (2000)

¶ And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte; and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28
¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was contente thyt hys doughter ²shold haue them in kepyng. Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32 Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

Sortibrant warns Balan that women are not to be trusted. (2013)

¹ f iij, back, col. 2.

² f iiij.

mutabylyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and
 also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued
 by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes
 4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray-
 tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne
 me to ouermoeche blame, I shold gyue to the suche a
 buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down
 8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was
 euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took
 the frensshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-
 oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr
 12 naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of
 eternal glorie, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer
 lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shold he be Inspyred with
 the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in
 16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes:
 "What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maad you to
 speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of
 suche thynges." ¹Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-
 20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the
 douzter sayd to them that they were not assembled
 to plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they
 were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette
 24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and
 enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and
 tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the
 other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my
 28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe
 you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche de-
 maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and
 of theyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thynke that
 32 they were gladd eche of other that they were al
 togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes
 the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crysten-
 dom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrecyon the

Floripas in a rage
 threatens Sorti-
 brant. (2016)

She conducts the
 French knights to
 her chambre.
 (2024)

Naymes is struck
 with the beauty
 of Floripas.

Roland and Oliver
 embrace each
 other. (2030)

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynymys, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the hondes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2039)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2049) he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

and after Roland's.

¶ But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente¹ to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyue hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that she myzt haue tydynges certeyn of guy of bourgoyne, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuoire you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute ony doubte of ony man lyuynge." she was contente, & they were contente, and promysed fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to duc naymes for to knowe what 24 he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauiere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the dougter, "your kyng is 28 sory for you." After she came to Rycharde and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, I am Rycharde of Normandy." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the thou puttest to 32 deth on a tyme corsuble myn vnle. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayd that he wold telle hys

¹ f iij, back.

² f iij, back, col. 2.

- name. "I am named rolland," sayð he, "sone to duc Myllon, & am neuwe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. (2064)
- Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneled down to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After, the doughter sayð: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe that I loue a knyght of fraunce aboue al them of the world, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I wolð gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayð: "I swere to you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot of mesure." "Seynours," sayð she, "I praye you that I may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym is alle my playsyr." Roland ansuerd and sayd: "syr guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan Florypes ¹vnderstode hym, anone she chaunged colour, Roland calls on Guy to come forward and accept her as his wife (2095), but Guy refuses. (2096)
- and sware [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke on a gybette. Rolland enhorted Guye that he shold do hyr wylle, and vpon that he aduanced hym, & hath Guy gives way. (2104)
- graunted. Thenne florypes sayð: "the sone of god of crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst, Floripas swears that if he does not she will have them all hanged. (2102)
- & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, she approched to hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys chekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne Floripas kiasse him, (2112)
- florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge and after produces the sacred relics, (2114)

the crown and
the nails,

whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu
cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For
Ioye they alle wepte ¹moche tenderly, and one after the
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they
had ben tofore.

which the French
knights devoutly
kiss. (2132)

¶ How Lucafer neuewe of the admyral vyo-
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12
was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires
of Balan if it is
true that Fiera-
bras is a prisoner.
(2147)

BAllant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & syttyng'
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a specyal 16
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admyral, is it
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue!"

Balan says it is.
(2152)

Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28
ben comen as messagers ²fro the sayd charles, which
haue vytupered and blamed vs gretelye in reprochyng
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

but that he has
twelve French
knights prisoners,
in charge of
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is
wrong to trust
them to a woman,
(2166)

lytel thyng ben chaunged and tordned fro theyr thougt.
 neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by
 your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe
 4 what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth,"
 said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my
 doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche
 proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to
 8 the chambre where the dougter was and the frensshe
 men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but
 lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly
 wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto
 12 the grounde. Whan Florypes saw that she was al
 abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble
 knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that
 is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husband
 16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye
 wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,
 For I complayne me wythoute makyng ouermoche euyl
 semblaunte." to whome Rolland answered: "doubte
 20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal
 knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you
 that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he
 shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred
 24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al
 armed wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And
 came fyrst to duc Naymes whych was dyscouered and
 bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by
 28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that
 almost he had ouerthrowen hym, & after sayd to hym:
 "of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me."
 The duke Naymes ansuerd: "paynym, I am of bauyere,
 32 and that is my contree, and am specyal counceyllour of
 Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al
 erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to
 ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles,

and that he will
 go see if they are
 safe. (2168)

He goes to Flori-
 pas' chamber,
 and bursts open
 the door with his
 foot. (2180)

Floripas calls on
 Roland to avenge
 this insult. (2186)

Roland promises
 to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,
 (2197)

and first seizing
 Naymes by the
 beard, (2204)

demands his
 name, (2207)
 which Naymes
 tells him, (2208)

redoubtē^d Emperour; & by cause that we haue not spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners. Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4 al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuerē^d: "I am contente thy folye be pardonned the; but I demaunde of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of ¹fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8 they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe," sayē^d the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyned, who that wyl may goo playe where hym lyst. Somme ryde oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the felde and 12 synge, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, & other playsaunte games. and in the morne euery man gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is sayē^d, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to p^e 16 poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not lyghtly vanquysshē^d. Suche been the peple in the contreye of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and 20 sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no thyng so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24 trouthe," said the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the Paynym ansuerē^d: "I shal teche you the manere," and he approched to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre, and in goyng Rolland made sygne to the duc that he 28 shold bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sharply that the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after ²said to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took 32 the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewe the bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

and asks him to let him go. (2214)

Lucifer asks him to describe the French and their games. (2216)

Naymes says some hunt, (2221)

some play chess or tables, (2224)

and that they are all brave and hard to conquer.

Lucifer asks him if he knows the game of the "grete cole?" (2230)

Naymes says, "No."

Lucifer takes a coal and shows him how to blow it. (2236)

- to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente
 al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was
 almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes
 4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke
 that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so
 grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed to the
 grounde, and sayd to hym: "Fals creature that thou
 8 arte, Whome I bysêche god confounde, thou wendest to
 haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there
 wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth,
 syr duc, ye can wel playe and blowe atte cole. blessyd
 12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd
 duc Naymes, "yf I haue maad hym to vnderstonde hys
 folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he
 truffed wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto
 16 duc Naymes, And sayd: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to
 be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more
 charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his
 ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote
 20 now ¹that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse
 me. For by force he wold haue had me and my fader
 had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold I haue suffred it,
 but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn-
 24 ous deth."

Naymes blows
 one so as to burn
 Lucifer's beard,
 (2243)

and then kills him
 with the brand.
 (2248)

Roland praises his
 play. (2253)

Floripas thanks
 him, (2256)

and declares she
 would never have
 married Lucifer.

- ¶ How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe
 men dyslodged' thadmyral fro his paleys
 wyth grete bataylle, and' how by enchaunte-
 28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the
 douzter: ca. xj

- Florypes was wyse, and had consyderacyon that
 -Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued wyth
 32 thadmyral, and sayd to the frensshe men: "lordes,
 knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

Floripas reminds
 them that Lucifer

was Balan's
greatest friend,
and would surely
be missed,

and advises them
to arm them-
selves, (2270)

and suddenly
attack the Sara-
cens. (2275)

They arm, and
start out two and
two at night fall.
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-
suble, (2289)
and Oliver Cold-
roe. (2291)

The Saracens fly.
(2299)
Some jump out of
the windows.
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng'. he abydeth for hym to
come to dyner, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be
retorneð. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon
ye shal be here encombreð and assaylled, and al the 4
golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal
be dede. Wherefore I counceyl you that ye doo arme
you and put you in poynte. take lyztly your helmes and
your sheldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8
doubteð of other vnarmed. therefore I wyl not that ye
¹ be closeð ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue
you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12
and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dough-
ter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, &
prestly armed them, and gyrde their swerdes aboute
them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16
goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,
in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute
at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20
nyght and day. And the formest of them in the waye
was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryt fyersly for
to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche
man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynyns and sara- 24
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not.
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyuer put to deth
the Kynge Celdroe. Ther was not one but that they
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28
appoynted anone was torneð vp so down & caste to the
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and
sowned in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and
dysmembred: Other lepe out of the ² wyndowes, whyche 32
after were founden dede: Other were all to-hewen,
sholdres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

¹ f vj, back, col. 2.

² f vij.

- to the depe dyche. Rolland went, after whyche had hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym, And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche
4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother," sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Certeyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyll contente."
Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them
8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle
12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there had not be somme for to haue drawn hym oute he had neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of
16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral, byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you
20 scorne me nomore, I shal wel aduenge me or two monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your wylle be doon; but the nyzt is ouer nyghe; by myn
24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dysplaysaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you
28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men, accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I
32 shal neuer departe for none euyll wether that shal come, Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the frensshe men to be drawn at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by a window. (2311)

The French are masters of the castle, (2321)

but have no food. (2325)

Balan, who had fallen into a ditch, calls for help. (2330)

Sortibrant and others rescue him. (2335)

He swears vengeance.

Sortibrant advises him to wait for daylight. (2352)

Balan laments over Lucifer. (2355)

He is sure the
French knights
cannot hold out,
as they have no
provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles
send them any
help. (2367)

In the morning
the Saracens
assemble, (2369)

they cover four
square miles.

Balan engages
Marvin, "a moche
fals thief," to
steal the magic
girdle. (2387)

Marvin agrees.
(2397)

And after I shal make florypes the putayn to be brente
in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde
them, For they be not vytaylled scars for foure dayes.
And of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4
socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde
the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo
socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other
parte, charles shal ¹haue noo tydynges of his barons ne 8
shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in
lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded
and went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And on the
morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12
concluded to laye the syege, and sware to holde it
seuen yere longe but yf he had of them his wylle.
Thenne come there so many paynyns in the contreye
aboute that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. 16
ye may thynke in what daunger the frensshe men were,
whyche were but twelue persones onely, and had none
other conduyte ne comforte but to be wythin assyege
in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20
as the sarasyns dyd gretely theyr deuoyr for to entre,
yet they coude no thyng gryeue them. Thadmyral called
one marpyn, a moche fals thief emonge alle humayn
creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpyn, by the berde that 24
I bere on my chynne yf thou mayst do soo moche as for
to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal
rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde & syluer,
& thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28
it, I am sure that the frensshe men shal sone be dede
for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."
¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that ²as longe as it
shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold 32
neuer haue be famyne. "Syr," sayd the thief, "abyde
tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,
or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

¹ f vij, back.

² f vij, back, col. 2.

- shal delyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght,
 he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of
 water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the
 4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he
 mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entred in to the
 toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of
 Florypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dya-
 8 bolyke wordes he opened it; and whan he was wythin,
 he sawe that al þe barons were fast a-slepe, and he made
 so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght
 awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so
 12 pryuely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrde hym self
 wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked,
 whiche was moche fayre; & was enclyned anone to haue
 defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke,
 16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye moche strongly,
 and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherefore the
 maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they
 saw marpyn the thief as blacke ¹as a moore, the moost
 20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bour-
 goyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth
 hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that
 she shold not be aferde of ony thyng. And he came
 24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the thief had
 defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym,
 he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and
 Guye of bourgoyne recountred hym, and gaf hym so
 28 grete a stroke that he clefted hym by the myddel, and
 cutte a two the gyrdel, and the candel quenched. The
 other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke,
 & the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see
 32 wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had
 stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see,
 there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a
 Iewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

At night he crosses
the moat, (2403)

climbs into the
tower, (2406)

and comes to
Floripas' cham-
ber. (2408)

He sends the
French knights to
sleep by enchant-
ment. (2411)

He attempts to
ravish Floripas,
(2428)
who cries for
help. (2431)

Guy hears her
cries, (2441)

runs to her cham-
ber, (2442)

and cuts down
Marvin with his
sword. (2448)

He throws his
body into the sea,

and the girdle is
lost. (2464)

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be reconuerd.
Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted
hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god-¹des
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised
at Marvin's not
returning. (2482)

W han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche
abasshed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and hys
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is deed,
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you
that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tassemble your
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16
cristen men." And wyth slynges and other engynes
they doo caste stones & dartes enuenuymed, but—blessyd
be god!—the frensshe men doubted them no thyng
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24
And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche
dysplaysaunte for the necessitye of the frensshe men, of
hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes she
swowned & fyl to grounde ²as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,
and recomforted hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys
felawes: "My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessitye
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

Sortibrant says he
is surely dead,
(2484)

and advises Balan
to order the
assault to begin.
(2485)

The French de-
fend themselves
well, (2492)

bnt their pro-
visions begin to
fail. (2496)

Hunger begins to
be felt, especially
by the women.
(2497)

Guy of Burgundy
proposes to his
fellows

damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold
abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme
vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My
lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power,
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they
had pourueyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and
sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the ¹puyssaunce
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al
20 byleue on them wythout varyengi." The mayde sayd:
"Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,
24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.
And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,
and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,
28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and
encence; and many other tresours were there assembled.
Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete
tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that
32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled?
Wold god that Rychard of normandy had now Iuppy
in hys cyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplysse
wyth it the chyrche of the holy Trynyste. And that

to make a sortie
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that
if they would be-
lieve on Mahomet
they would have
food enough.
(2528)

Roland asks to see
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads
them to the
shrine, (2535)

where were
Appolyn, and
Mahomet, Termagaunt,
Margot, and
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-
sure.

Guy wishes they
had all that gold.
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn
 þ^e chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with
 the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette
 them in good poynte." Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4
 "Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye
 them mercy & adoure them, ¹to thende that they
 enclyne them to you to doo you comforte." guy sayd
 vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8
 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may
 not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And
 Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe,
 and were anone alle to-broken. Wherfore Roulland 12
 sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that
 ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been
 fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make
 semblaunte to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16
 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu
 Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Roulland, that ye say
 the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl
 that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20
 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn,
 of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you
 socours of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete
 vytalle for to satysfye our hungre." 24

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the
 toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which
 they recouerd' twenty sommyers charged'
 of vytaylle: capitulo xiiij 28

She falnts with
 hunger. (2584)

² **W**Han Florypes had sayd, she fyl down to the
 erth a-swoune for sorowe & anguysshe.
 Wherfor guy of bourgoyn wept moche sorou-
 fully for the loue of hyr. H[e]reupon Olyuer the 32
 courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes,

¹ g j.

² g j, col. 2.

- I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures
humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and
smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but
4 that I shold fyght quykely wyth the paynymys;” &
semblably sayd rolland. Wherfore, wythout other
delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte,
and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, &
8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they
were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the
other: “Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogier, it byhoueth
that one of you¹ abyde for to kepe the place, that at the
12 retornyng we may entre surely.” ¶ The Duke Naymes
coude take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus:
“Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of
persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched,
16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo
so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn
hors. For I am harde of ²synewes, and haue myn herte
wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte
20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubt
ye no thyng therof.” Rolland ansuerd: “syr, ye say
wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that
one of you two shal abyde.” but it was not their playsyr
24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rol-
land, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shetted the
yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute,
whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in
28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel.
Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe
men, Wherfor hastely he sente for brullant and Sorty-
brant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd:
32 “my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen,
and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn,
i shal be euyl contente. Wherfore do sowne your
hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe.”

Oliver proposes a
sortie, (2598)

to which all agree.

They sally out.
(2615)

Roland wishes
Naymes or Ogier
to remain behind
to guard the gate.
(2618)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though
he is old yet he
can still fight.
(2620)

Thierry and
Geoffrey agree to
remain. (2631)

Balan sees them
coming, (2638)

and bids Sorti-
brant assemble
his men to resist
them. (2645)

¹ orig. yon.

² g j, back.

The Saracens
attack them,

but in a little
while more than
100 are killed.
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's
nephew, comes
up with 15,000
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on
his companions.
(2670)

All the Saracens
are afraid of him.
(2679)

After the battle
the French
knights meet 20
pack-horses, laden
with provisions
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the
escort. (2703)

And assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and assaylled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. ¹For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacyon, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycторыe, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouzt to 28 be. & after that þ^e batayll was fynnysshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by ²the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Incon-tynent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl

¹ g j, back, col. 2.

² g ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes & Wylliam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth. And Rolland and the other came & auoyded the place, and drive them inside the castle gates. (2704)

4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete payne.

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the
8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' de-
maunded' of thadmyral, and the com-
playntes that Florypes made for hym, &
other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 **A**S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as
they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the som-
myers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of
men of armes of the partye of kyng Claryon, that it was
16 merueylle. There was thenne an harde and stronge
recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, &
Aulbery hys ¹sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye,
Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn
20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For
the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of
kyng Claryon, he auanced hym for to smyte hym. that
came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn
24 vnder hym of the paynyns, & sodeynly he was en-
uyronned of moo than an hondred knyghtes sarasyns,
whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, &
after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and
28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at
his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he
began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ "O Ihesus, veray
god, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now,
32 that am euyl fortunéd? O Ihesus, comforte me! O
noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn

The Saracens
press heavily on
the French. (2706)

Basyn and Aubrey
are slain, (2730)

and Guy taken
prisoner, (2743)

and led away
blindfolded. (2748)

He prays and
cries for help.
(2749)

¹ g ij, col. 2.

Clarion mocks
Guy. (2753)

The French are so
hard pressed that
they have to take
refuge in the
castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires
after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her
he is a prisoner.
(2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares
she will surrender
the castle if Guy
be not rescued
before two days.
(2792)

vnclē, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng^t claryon
sayd^t to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyngē shall auayle
the, thy cryeng ne thy brayeng^t. I shal delyuier
the al lyuyng^t to the admyral of spayn thys day, And 4
to-morne thou shalt be hanged^t." But now ye may
wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys
felowes, were euyl contentē whan they sawe the Erle
Guye soo prysonner. ¶ Neuertheles¹ they dyd grete 8
feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to
the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates
barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thenne floripes
cam anon to rolland, & said^t to hym: "syr rolland, I 12
requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of
bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye
departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.
Ye ought to bryngē hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16
Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland^t
ansuerd^t: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye
no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see
hym; the paynyns haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20
knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer
yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth
alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland^t,
whych wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24
rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons
of fraunce, by that god^t that maad heuen & erthe, yf I
haue not guy of bourgoyne, to whome I ought to be
maryed^t, I shal yelde thys toure or the nexte day be 28
passed^t. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to
hym, and for loue of hym be baptysed and be crysten.
Alas! our loues haue sone faylled^t. This sorowe hath
made me² wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had^t 32
these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland^t
myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but
promysed^t hyr to make hyr glad^t wythin ij dayes, for

¹ g ij, back.

² g ij, back, col. 2.

thenne atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr
 playsyr, and that she shold no thyng doubt therof;
 "for knowe ye surely," sayd rolland, "I had leuer to
 4 be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal
 be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &
 madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may
 not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre
 8 dayes passed syth we ete. we haue purchaced vytayl for
 vs & these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late
 vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente
 to entreiene the lyf:" for ye ouzt to knowe that they
 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by
 cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
 deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,
 the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and
 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng and lawdyng
 god deuoutelye.

Roland promises
 he will rescue
 him, (2804)

and advises her to
 take some of the
 food which they
 had won. (2812)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,
 whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled,
 20 dyscolourd, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye
¹by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for p^o
 daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his
 enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-
 24 poyled of his armes; & thenne appyered his body wel
 membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &
 who he was. the baron ansuerd: "Admyral, I fere not
 to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-
 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to
 rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel
 to be doubted." ballant ansuerd: "I knowe the wel
 ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my
 32 dougter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me
 gretely: & I know wel that she loueth the more than
 ony man lyuyng; & I for that loue haue lost many men
 of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Meanwhile Guy
 is led before
 Balan, (2820)

who demands his
 name. (2826)

Guy tells him.
 (2829)

Balan recognizes
 him as his daugh-
 ter's love,

and the cause of
 all his trouble.
 (2836)

Balan demands
the names of the
knights in the
castle. (2838)

Guy recounts
their names.

A Saracen gives
him a blow on the
mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him
with one hand,
and with the other
breaks his neck.
(2856)

The Saracens fall
on him and beat
him nearly to
death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in short tyme, &
dysmembred. & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daunger-
ously." Guy ansuerd: "gladly I shal say to the. Be
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,
Olyner, his felowe, ryght courageous, Thyerry, duc of 8
Ardayne, Rychard of Normandye, Gherard¹ of Mun-
dydye, Naymes duc of bauyere, & basyn the genewey,
whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god & helpe
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12
myral was ryzt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;
Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour,
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not
holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre
wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þe necke behynde,
that he brake it, And, wythoute moeuynge of hande or
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral.
¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for
the mysprysynge that guy had doon in hys presence to-
fore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold
be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara- 28
syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admyral had
not commaunded them that² he shold not be put to 32
deth in suche manere.

¹ g iij, col. 2.

² g iij, back.

¶ How the paynyns had' purposed' to haue
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym

4 myztely : capitulo xv

- A**fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and
straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brullant
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many
8 other of his counceyl, and sayd to them : " my frendes,
I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought
to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete
reproche & despysyng, as ye see and knowe." "Syr,"
12 sayd Sortybrant, "I shal gyue to you good counceyl.
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the
prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this
16 prysoner ; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe
vnto þe said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in
good poynte : and I am sure that the frey[n]sshe men be
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see
20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for
to socoure hym ; & your peple that shal be hydde in
the busshement shal come out on them & take them.
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your
24 playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to
be good, & was therwyth wel content ; wherfore, wyth-
oute takyng of any other delyberacyon, the galowes
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place
28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therin secretly xx M
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on
hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore : &
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a
council. (2869)

Sortibrant advises
him to have Guy
hanged, (2884)

in front of the
castle,

and to set an
ambush for the
French if they
should try to
rescue him. (2880)

This advice is
approved. (2891)

20,000 Saracens
are placed in
ambush, (2892)

and Guy is led
bound to the
gallows. (2905)

He calls on his
companions for
help. (2911)

Roland, from a
window, sees the
gallows, (2913)

and tells the
others. (2917)

Naymes guesses
the object of the
gallows. (2922)

Floripas implores
Roland to rescue
Guy, (2928)

for she can never
survive him.

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke,
and hys eyen bounden, & sawe no thyng whyther he
went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to
crye: "O redemptour of the world, my maker and my 4
god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an
euyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in
to thy kepyng, for the body taketh hys ende! And lyke
as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre 8
the to counceyll and comferte me. ¶ O noble barons
of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf ye suffre me to
be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland,
fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me 12
on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes,
Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel
roche, and sawe the galowes reysed. Wherefore he came
to hys felawes and sayd: "I meruaylle moche what 16
thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the
dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon."
Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them,
that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20
guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng
al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they
knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued,
that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the 24
fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to
wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes
reysed, and guy, hir loue and tocomyng husbond, so
shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28
was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes,
shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged
tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,
by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the 32
wyndowe, & shal deye in despe^racyon." and after she
came to rolland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and
kyssed hys feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Rolland, in

thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to
 take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue gye,
 and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme
 4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the
 tyme is ouer short; so that by the playsyr of god ye
 shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes
 armed them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes
 8 and sheldes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors
 backe sprange oute. And or they rode any fether,
 rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth &
 our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-
 12 duyte & ¹loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but
 x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In
 thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-
 gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,
 16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged.
 And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde,
 that prestly he be reysed, And not to leue hym for lyf
 ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he
 20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I
 swere ²to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde
 durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal
 haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in
 24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my
 lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr
 chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne
 of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it
 28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good
 courage they yssued out, noo thyng dreying the puy-
 saunce of the paynmys. & after, Florypes and hyr
 damoyssellys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.
 32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden-
 aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes,
 & the paynmys were vnder the galowes, and were besy
 to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

She urges them
 to lose no time.
 (2929)

The French arm
 themselves
 hastily, mount,
 and prepare to
 start. (2938),

Roland warns his
 companions to
 keep together,
 (2944)

and to be ready,
 each to help the
 other. (2946)

Floripas brings
 out the sacred
 crown, (2960)

which the knights
 kiss, (2962)

and then pass out
 of the gates. (2966)

¹ orig. boyal.

² g iiij, back.

Guy is on the point of being hanged, (2972)

bounden, & hys handes also, and a grete corde aboute hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynmys sayeng^t: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4 thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thynge wherof ye shal repente." Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetu-

but Roland puts the Saracens to flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of them.

The ambush breaks out. (2989)

ously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began to flee; and they were so hastely poursyewed that xx 8 of them ¹were slayn. here vpon they that were in the wode camen out, makyng a grete bruyt; and al afore came Cornyfer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of grete faeyon, And began to crye: "ha! ye frensshe 12 men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is Iuged by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterprysed a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16

Roland charges Cornyfer, (2996)

angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym smote on his shelde daungerously; but after that he was recoured, he atteyned and smote the paynym so 20 puyssantly that he clefted hys heed doun to the body. and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto the galowes, and vnbynfelde & vnbonde syr guye of bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24 armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym, Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce,

who takes the arms and horse of a Saracen. (3032)

he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynmys 28 hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and meruayllous deffence that they made, for anone al the sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba²rons of fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32 thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement & of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deffence and puyssaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns.

The French are hard pressed.

¹ g iij, back, col. 2.

² g v.

to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were
 empresshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of
 bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was
 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd
 gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye
 traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney
 that I am escaped fro your bandes." & by thus fyght-
 8 yng they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete
 bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng, on that other
 syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to
 empresshe them the passage, that they myzt not wyth-
 12 drawe them. Wherfore Rolland, holdyng durandal in
 hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd
 to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs,
 but of necessity we must auance vs for our owne con-
 16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no
 thyng, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland,"
 Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the
 toure we haue noo thyng to ete, & yf we were¹ wythin,
 20 how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body
 daungerously wounded in fyghtyng vpon the sarasyns,
 than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute
 daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day
 24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take
 it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the
 other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete
 purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng in
 28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is,
 Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye
 of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,
 and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold
 32 plese hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for
 the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral
 shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the
 danoyss sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

Guy performs
marvellous feats.

The Saracens be-
gin to give way.
(3041)

Roland calls on
his companions to
make an effort to
gain the bridge,
(3052)

but Guy reminds
him that they
have no pro-
visions, (3055)

and says it is
better to die
fighting than be
starved. (3058)

All the others
agree. (3061)

Floripas from a
window cheers on
Guy. (3080)

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr.
 And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus
 retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe
 men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4
 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt
 and descomfyture of paynyns, that they eschewed &
 made them to flee tofore him as ¹the byrde tofore the
 sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8
 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and
 attayned hym so harde on the sometete of the heed, that
 he cleft hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherefore
 whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12
 hym : "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue
 menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes
 the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryzt dere."

The French make
a charge, and

scatter the Sara-
cens as sparrows
before the hawk.
(3101)

Guy slays Ram-
pire.

Roland praises
his valour. (3109)

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16
 pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged'
 and' foughten by the paynyns : ca. xvj

Floripas reminds
the knights that
they have no food.
(3116)

The Saracens are
driven back.
(3123)

The French meet
with 20 pack-
horses, laden with

WHan Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr
 damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20
 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem
 hyely : "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete
 somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that
 we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24
 damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had
 wel spoken, and in tyme : "for yf we entre in to the
 castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and ther-
 upon al the barons with one ²courage goon ageynst the 28
 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche
 wyse *pat* they made them to voyde the place, & to wyth-
 drawe and goo backe a grete dele. and thus as they
 retourned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32
 ageynst them. For xx *sommyers* passed forth by, which
 certeyn paynyns ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

¹ g v, back.

² g v, back, col. 2.

wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they provisions, (3136)
 that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne
 the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and which they drive
 inside the gates
 of the castle.
 4 so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the
 toure. & in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the
 body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day byfore,
 which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the On their way they
 take up the body
 of Basyn. (3150)
 8 toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the
 brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge,
 and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were
 they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may
 12 wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he Balan is furious
 sawe that Guye of bourgoyne whyche had ben in his
 subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he
 knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so
 16 habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente
¹dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant and calls a coun-
 cil, (3163)
 of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other
 of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them : " My barons, ye
 20 knowe that these frensshe men haue ryght euyl gouerned
 vs. They haue garnyssed the toure wyth brede, wyn,
 and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the
 knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for
 24 he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make
 to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssaunce is
 ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete
 thought and melancolye what we may best doo."
 28 To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : " syr admyral,
 I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete Sortibrant advises
 him to frighten
 the French by
 poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure
 & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a blowing of trum-
 pets, &c.
 32 thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan
 the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde
 that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure."
 Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :

Brullant says he "Sortybrant, frende! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue
 is a fool, not *pat* the frenssh men that be within the toure ben
 for the French are of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde
 not likely to be so easily frightened, wyth blowyng^t & sownyng^t of hornes. ¹Certeyn ye 4
 (3184) haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to
 you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is
 there wythin: the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble
 for there are in Rolland^t is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8
 the castle Roland, that who-someuer Ioyneth to hym, he putteth hym to
 and Oliver, deth: And there is the counte olyuer: knowe ye not of
 his grete fyersnes, whyche conquerd Kynge Fyerabras,
 the myghtyest of all the paynymys? And I swere to 12
 you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I
 haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-
 dyer, Gherard^t, whyche hath doon to vs grete domage.
 and Gerard, Also there is therry, the duc of ardayne, and another 16
 Terry, fals olde olde knyght that named hym self Naymes, duc
 Naymes, of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
 Guy, and 5 others. taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged. And
 other ther be whyche I haue not named. There ben 20
 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel
 they ben alle of grete resystance.

Roulland^t, the ²neuwe of charles, is of soo grete
 fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng^t, ne stroke ne 24
 shotte that is gyuen hym: and doute ye not, that, yf
 And if they were all like Rolaud they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they
 they would soon shold chace vs oute of thys royame or they ³shold slee vs.
 chase the whole And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28
 Saracen army out of Spain. (3204) he hath ryzt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed
 and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony
 thyng holpen vs." ¶ Of these wordes that brullant
 Balan is enraged, thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng^t angry, & sayd to 32
 hym: "ye haue ryght enyl and folysshly spoken." and
 and tries to strike so sayeng, he wold^t haue smyton hym wyth hys staf,
 him, (3211) but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng^t:

¹ g vj, col. 2. ² orig. nenewe. ³ g vj, back.

“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and^d late vs thynke for to assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals frenssh men be vaynquysshed^d and^d smyton in pyeces.”

but Sortibrant prevents him. (3213)

4 and^d thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes, trompettes, and^d other Instrumentes for to sowne & to make bruyt and^d noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns were there assembled, that they helde p^e space of a myle
8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,

The Saracens are assembled; they cover a square mile of ground. (3221)

12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men. And^d by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd^d the fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men, furyous and^d ¹wode as lyons, came to the yates of the
16 toure, & the maydens also al armed^d, whiche with the barons dyd^d so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught and^d smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouerthrewe and fyl doun dede. For they were aboue on
20 hye, and^d threwe doun grete stones, dartes of yron, & other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made contynuel resystence.

By means of engines they win the outer defences of the castle,

but the French drive them back. (3230)

¶ How the toure was broken and^d brente by
24 enchaument, & the barons in grete peryl of deth, and^d restored^d by assaulte maad^d on the Paynyns: capitulo xvij

28 **T**He Paynyns perseueryng^d in thassault afore sayd^d, Thenchautour came tofore the admyral, and^d sayd^d to hym: “Ryzt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte,
32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me.” And^d whan they were alle redy as he had^d deuysed^d, he sette them rounde aboute the tour. And^d by hys crafte and^d

The engineer says he has his engines ready. (3250)

He sets the walls
of the castle on
fire. (3289)

The French are in
despair, (3284)

but Floripas bids
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-
paration extin-
guishes the fire.
(3292)

Balan swears
vengeance on his
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says
the French must
soon give in,

for they have no
more shot nor
stones. (3302)

By a furious
assault the Sara-
cens break down a
large part of the
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þ^e
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &
make fyre at vtteraunce, ¹wherfore the frensshe men
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no
moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto
the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre
artyfycially brente the stones. thus she made this
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencion to 16
make hys doughter to deye of an euyl deth. The kyng
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and
trompettes, and recommence the assaulte al newe, and
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20
quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And
thassaulte was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of dartes,
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the ²grete
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tumbled down to
the erthe. the barons of fraunce moche abasshed, sayd 28
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-
quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the
pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in
grete thouzt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32
dysmaye ye noo thyng! thys toure is stronge ynough
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

¹ g vij.

² g vij, col. 2.

- plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetchē it, And¹ as wel may we slee the paynims therwyth, as wyth stones, and² better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue, and advises them to use her father's gold for missiles. (3327)
- 4 came to hyr wyth grete Ioye, & kysse³ hyr moche amercously and swetelye. And⁴ after she wente & opene⁵ the toure and⁶ place where the tresour¹ was Innumerable, and⁷ wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the The French do so, (3334)
- 8 batylments of the toure, and⁸ threwe vpon the paynims, in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyturē. And⁹ more-ouer the paynims, seeyng¹⁰ the golde falle on them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessy¹¹ their and the Saracens leave off the assault and fight amongst themselves for the gold. (3340)
- 12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And¹² for the concupiscence of that golde they faught and¹³ slewe eche other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt & ²angry that he wende to haue dye¹⁴, and¹⁵ began to crye
- 16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete dommage Innumerable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste, which I haue wyth grete payne ³& dylygence assembled¹⁶, Balan, alarmed and grieved for his treasure, causes his men to retire. (3348)
- 20 And¹⁷ had¹⁸ recomaunded¹⁹ it to my god mahon, and²⁰ had²¹ made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled²² me. but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
- 24 Sortybrant answer²³: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng amercuayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for Sortibrant comforts him,
- for he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for he is a-slepe; I byleue none other: for in tyme passed and says Mahoun must be asleep,
- 28 he hath wel watched²⁴ & kepte it; but those frenssh men ben so wyly theues pat they haue stolen it fro hym subtylly." Thadmyral beyng²⁵ al angry bycause the nyght came on repayred²⁶ with his peple toward hys
- 32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte table, Roulland²⁷, whyche was in the hye toure surely with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;
- The Saracens retire to their camp.

¹ orig. tresour. ² g vij, bk. ³ orig. payue.
⁴ orig. And' repayred'.

Roland from a window sees Balan at supper, (3358)

and proposes a sortie. (3363)

They all arm and start. (3364)

Balan sees them coming, (3369) and sends for Espoulart, his nephew, to meet them. (3372)

Espoulart charges Roland;

he is unhorsed, (3386)

but is soon up again.

Roland stuns him, catches him up, and carries him away on his horse. (3392)

Balan calls for a rescue. (3397)

and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng¹ at the table through the wyndowe, and after cam to the other barons and sayd to them: “¹my lordes and brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4 hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease. and me semeth it shold be grete honour and prowesse to vs to make hym leue² his repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8 accorde, & hastely they armed them and put them in poynte, and fayr yssued out, comyng to the place where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and sente hastely for a 12 paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and was hys neuewe. And sayd to hym: “Espoulart, cosyn, peradventure the frensse men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therefore depesse the, and be redy anone, and doo so 16 that they be taken & destroyed.” and anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came ayenst the barons, holdyng in hys honde a dart of stele. And fyrst he encountred Rolland, and hytte hym in his 20 shelde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed; but it came soo to passe that it touched not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland came vpon the paynym, and gaf hym a good stroke that 24 he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and a man of so grete myght, ³that moche lyghtly he remounted vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28 wyse that the paynym wyst not where he was. And as he was fallyng¹ down of hys hors, Rolland moche puyssauntly caught hym, & layed hym thwart vpon hys hors, and bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32 rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys neuewe. but they wyst not what to doo, For in defendyng them many of them were slayn and hurte

¹ g vij, back, col. 2.

² orig. lene.

³ g viij.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other
paynmys must retorne: & rolland cessed not to renne
tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons
4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shette the yates wel surely,
and had noo feare of ony empesshement.

but the French all
escape into the
castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the
second' book which conteyneth xvj chapy-
8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of
fraunce were socoured & the paynmys
confused'.

¶ Of the moeuynge of the peres of fraunce for
12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'
Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye
was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng' thus assyged and
detyned, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke
moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral,
whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it
plesed' hyr: & they demaunded of hyr what man he

20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone
of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche
& hath grete puyssaunce. And yf ye wyl doo grete
dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The duc

24 Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr: "Madame, it is not
behoeful to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man
of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we
been the more Ioyous. and I shal say to you wher-

28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-
myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred
and chaunged for hym." And of thys conclusyon were
contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,

32 Rychard of Normandye called the other his felawes,
and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

They ask Floripas
who their prisoner
is. (3444)
She tells them he
is Balan's
nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes
to kepe him to
exchange for any
of them which
might be taken.
(3452)

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message, (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. (3459) Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. (3467)

enclosed^d in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and^d deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold^d be good^d that we shold^d 4¹ conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd^d and^d sayd^d: "Syr rychar^d, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For 8 there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns. for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape 12 wyth hys lyf. And be ye sure, but yf god^d doo for vs and^d shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd^d: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost Ioyous 16 lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland^d and^d his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced^d, and^d thanked & 20 preyse^d hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd^d: "My brethern and^d my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and^d knowe wel that in shorte tyme we 24 shal be dyscomfyted^d: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed^d vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce 2 may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogier ansuerd^d and^d sayd^d: 28 "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and^d shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and^d shal doo my deuoyr." The 32 duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd^d and^d sayd^d: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vncouenable for to goo thyder: for

¹ g viij, bk.

² g viij, bk, col. 2.

whan the Paynmys shold knowe it, we shold not be redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs, we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."

4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rycharð

William and Gerard offer to go, (3471) as also Guy, but Floripas will not let him go. (3477)

8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suffysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valyaunte. And yf it happene that in doynge thys message

At last Richard says he will go, (3480)

12 I be taken & slayn of the paynmys, After my deth he may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. ¶ For whan he had

16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey, I wold not accepte it but by one moyen, which is suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,

20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he shold be free al his lyf, & many oher thynges:" & thenne thus it was concluded that rycharð shold goo forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to

to which they all agree. (3499)

24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye in any place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys persone or deteyned prysoner. Rycharð promysed it &

28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rycharð, after his oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by

They consult how he is to get away unseen. (3509)

32 them in any wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn opynyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours

Roland suggests that they should make a sortie,

and distract the
attention of the
Saracens while

Richard steals
away in the other
direction. (3529)

The knights weep
over Richard's
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them
fear nothing,

for by God's grace
he will soon bring
succour.

vp̄on the sarasyns, & do gretely our deuoyr, & they ſhāl
be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs.
Rychard ſhāl departe & passe forth & leue ¹ vs, & we ſhāl
remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4
whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, ſhāl mowe
be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know
ony thyng therof; and if it playse god & hys swete
moder, he ſhāl saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8
shorte tyme we ſhāl haue Ioye & consolacyon that we
ſhāl hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng, the peres of
fraunce, seeyng that thys thyng was not yet achyueuē
surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12
theyr affayre. The noble duc ² rychard, seeyng his
felowes wepyng for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne
doubte ye noo thyng! yf god gyue me the grace, to
whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16
and thys contreye, and in especyal that I may fynde
myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge ³ of mantryble, I may
wel ensure you that I shal brynge you socours in suche
wyse that by the grace of god ye ſhāl sone be delyuerd." 20
The barons ansuerd to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and
pyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!"
After this conclusyon they sayd nomore: the nyzt cam
on, & eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24
morne for to begynne to complysshe theyr enterpryse.

¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng
claryon, a ryght myghty kyng, ranne after
hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd 28
Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges:
capitulo ij

But a great disap-
pointment was in
store for them.

¶ Rete gryef and annoye cam to þe peres of fraunce
whan Rychard of Normandy shold departe for 32
to goo to kyng charles. On the morne whan

¹ h i, col. 2. ² orig. dul. ³ orig. brydde. ⁴ h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in which they were
 in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche
 kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold
 4 yssue out. Wherefore by the space of ij monethes they
 coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day
 emonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntyng¹ a
 lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the
 8 bridge was forgotten, Thenne the barons armed them
 & mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto
 theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the
 paynims, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began
 12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were
 there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.
 and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr
 enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The
 16 duc Rychard al in wepyng¹ commaun¹ded to god hys
 felawes, And secretly departed, and took hys waye at
 al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr
 lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and
 20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and
 mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc
 rychard, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the
 hoost; and in wepyng¹ they recommaunded hym swetely
 24 to god many tymes. Rychard of Normandye thus
 rydyng¹ allone, had feare alwaye that he shold be
 assaylled. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a
 montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habun-
 28 dantly. Thenne he doubted enterly that he shold be
 empesshed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd:
 "O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is
 ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn
 32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf," &
 blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many
 tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel
 clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperceyued

For in the morn-
 ing they found
 the castle sur-
 rounded by Sara-
 cens, (3540)
 so that for two
 months they had
 no chance of
 going out. (3459)

At last an occa-
 sion offers, and
 they sally out,
 (3567) and attack
 the Saracens.

While they are
 thus engaged
 Richard steals off.
 (3580)

His horse breaks
 down. (3612)

In despair he
 prays to God for
 help,

and crosses him-
 self.

¹ h i, back, col. 2.

Brillant and Sortibrant see him, (3628)

and tell Clarion,

who mounts and rides after him. (3640)

followed by other Saracens. (3645)

Richard, looking round, sees the Saracens coming after him. (3653)

He is almost in despair.

hym, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastily to Kyng Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral, and^t brillant sayd^t fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4 youde messenger, ¹one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for socours? And^t yf ye see not for remedye, there may come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounthe theyr 8 affayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne to vs grete dommage." Also sone as claryon herde these tydynges, anone he armed^t hym, & mounted^t vpon hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, 12 For for to renne xxx legthes he wold^t not be wery; & took hys shelde & his swerd of stele square & sharpe, & ranne toward Duc Rychard^t as he had^t be enraged^t, & other sarasyns folowed^t after hym. Rychard^t mounted^t 16 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng^t that he was poursyewed^t, & sayd^t: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful and^t sore greued^t, and^t that I may make them Ioyeful," & thus as he was in this thougt he loked^t behynde hym, & sawe the sarasyns come hastily after hym, whyche 24 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom the Kyng^t Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the courser tofore sayd^t, came tofore the other a grete waye. Neuer²theles, Rychard beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28 byhelde the hoost of the paynyms came ageynst hym with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat his hert was. what thyng myzt he thynk that they wold do wyth hym, & what tidynges his felowes shold 32 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde & susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus ymagynyng^t that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

¹ h ij.

² h ij, col. 2.

- vpon the sayd^d coursour, whyche ranne faster and^d more
 swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The tayle
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-
 what reysed^d & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete
 thyes & shōrt feet, & platte & rōunde, wyth lytel eeres;
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large &
 ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene &
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; &
 he was saddled with a saddle of yuorye, & the raynes of
 12 þ^e brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold;
 the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrde with
 iij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng^r moche melodyously.
 16 & þ^e paynym ¹smote hym with the spores moche
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more
 than xxx foot longe. And^d after escryed^d duc Rycharð
 the noble knyght, sayeng^r wyth an hye voys: "by
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer
 achyue thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng^r ony
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rycharð
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was moeued
 24 & chaunged^d, & ansuerd: "Sarasyne, wherfore arte thou
 of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced
 to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed^d thy tresour.
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and^d
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-
 warded^d to the by me." The paynym answerd^d: "cer-
 tain, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of
 32 mahoun be I cursed yf I doo ony thyng^r for the. I shal
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."
 Also sone as Rycharð knewe hys entencyon, he auauunced^d
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rycharð, & wyth

In front comes
Clarion on a
horse, half white,
half red, (3659)

with a peacock's
tail,

a white mane,
and green eyes.

His breast piece
is hung with little
gold bells.

Clarion calls on
Richard to sur-
render. (3673)

Richard asks him
to let him go, as
he has never done
him any harm.
(3684)

Clarion declares
he will have his
life. (3686)

Clarion cuts at
Richard, but does
him no harm.
(3688)

Richard smites
Clarion on the
neck, and cuts his
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's
horse, (3705)

and lets his own
go, bidding it an
affectionate fare-
well. (3713)

The Saracens
coming up try to
catch Richard's
horse, but in vain.
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hard vpon hys shelde; but
it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon
richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym,
by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys ¹swerde which 4
was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym,
lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the
necke so ryzt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in
suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8
spere lengthe, & he put þ^e trunke of the body to the
erthe al dede; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors,
& mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym,
whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12
Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel
pourueyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that yf
he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold
not haue swette a droppe of water; & for to swymme & 16
passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after
that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen
hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn,
for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20
to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen
that he drawe þ^e in to suche a waye that þou mayst
come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them. in
many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24
serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apper-
teyneth to me I thanke the gretely." & here vpon he
wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sara-
syns that followed after, came ²& fonde the kyng 28
Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were
so surprysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude
doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take
Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32
proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad
grete deffence, & took hys waye reunyng for to retorne
to the place that he was departed fro.

¹ h ij, back, col. 2.

² h iij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh
 thexcersyte of the admyral, & was seen &
 knowen of the peres of Fraunce, in soo
 4 moche that they thought that duc Rychard'
 had' been deed'; & how the brydge of
 Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

8 **R**ychard of Normandye wyth his swerde in hys
 fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne
 after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of
 whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &
 the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recoun-
 12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the
 sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyted and
 slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not
 reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that sawe the hors
 16 come reunnyng was thadmyral, whiche called gorant,
 sone of kyng' grehier, & also sortybrant of conymbres,
 & sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel
 aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my
 20 newewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.
 I see wel that he hath put to deth the messager of the
 Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors
 that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that
 24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that
 they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &
 cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in
 whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan
 28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was
 longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued,
 and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;
 and after that the yate was shette, they arenged them
 32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng
 pyetously. ¶ And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:

The Saracens find
 Clarion's body,
 and lament over
 him. (3724)

Balan sees Rich-
 ard's horse run-
 ning loose, (3740)

and thinks that
 Richard has been
 killed. (3742)

He orders the
 horse to be
 caught, (3744)

but none can
 catch him.

The knights admit
 him inside the
 gates,

and lament over
 Richard's death.

They are all in
great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandye! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none 4 helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these ¹wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas com-
forts them. (3763)

"Lordes, in the honour of god, leue your lamentyng 8 and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rycharde ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brouzt the body of kyng 12 Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethrocytes in hys entendement, cryed and sayd : "and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte?"

The Saracens re-
turn bearing the
body of Clarion.
(3775)

The sarasyns ansuerd : "Syr admyral, we may not lye 16 to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than iiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sara- 20 syns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The

Balan swoons on
hearing of his
nephew's death.
(3785)

sarasyns thus makynge thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she 24 knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : "Syr, knowe ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is trouth that Rycharde your messenger ²hath slayn the 28 kyng claryon & wonne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareylle of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & 32 here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys deuoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : "O my felawe of

There is great
grief over Clarion.
(3792)

Floripas explains
to the knights
what has hap-
pened. (3800)

¹ h iij, back.

² h iij, back, col. 2.

armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges
 that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am
 as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though
 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be
 richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and
 semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that
 richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to
 8 hym named Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary
 hastely, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,
 which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge
 the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to
 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the
 messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the
 whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and en-
 noyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by
 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on
 that other parte the ¹messenger of the frensshe men
 goeth thyder, and yf he recounthe his message to Charles,
 it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-
 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that
 noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf
 he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make
 hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages
 24 the messenger, "I shal do your commaundemente; and
 I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as
 that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an
 hondred leghes contynuelly, I shal neuer be wery."
 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromy-
 dary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake
 to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the
 that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou
 32 suffrest the frenssh men to passe ouer the brydge,
 whyche haue doon to hym grete damage, for they be
 lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon
 the goddes, with floripes his douzter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a
 message to Gala-
 fre, the bridge-
 ward of Mantrible,
 (3825)

that he is to allow
 no one to pass the
 bridge,

on pain of death.
 (3845)

Orages starts on a
 dromedary.

He arrives at
 Mantrible and
 delivers his
 message, (3860)

that he is on no
account to let
Richard pass.
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike
Orages,
but is prevented
by the by-stand-
ers. (3834)

He sends 15,000
men to look out
for Richard. (3898)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmy-
ral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is
thys : After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of
the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, 4
vnto Charles theyr ¹kyng^t; the whyche hath slayne
kyng^t Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he
passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not
conne fynde the manere to saue thy lyf, but that thou 8
shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was
perturbed^t and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre
he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at
the mouth lyke a bore enchaffed, and took a staffe, and 12
had^t smyton the messenger yf it had^t not be letted^t by
them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted^t
vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he
assembled^t many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16
xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed^t the
brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte
vp, and they wente and rode here and there for to
recountre þ^e messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20
ture they myzt fynde hym.

¶ How rychard of normandye passed the ryuer
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt
hert which cam tofore hym : [ca.] iiij 24

Richard is in great
doubt how to pass
Mantrible.

He sees the Sara-
cens covering all
the country,

and begins to pray
for help. (3904)

Rychard^t of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe
barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel
thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by ²hym self
myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28
in rydyng^t he behelde behynde hym, and sawe al the
contree couerd^t wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng^t
theym he was sore troubled^t in hys mynde, [&] began to
crye : "O Ihesus, kyng^t of glorye, at thys tyme be thou 32
kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

¹ h iiij, col. 2.

² h iiij, back.

see wel the declýne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force
 retorned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed¹ faythfully
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore,
 8 my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy
 wyлле be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn
 entencion: after the same gouerne me!" he beyng² nyghe
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng³ to
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral auauuced⁴
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed wyth an hyghe
 voys: "O messenger, what someuer thou be, thynke for
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ^e houre
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged."
 These wordes so herde of rychard were ²not to hym
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng⁵ a swerde in
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquest of
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced thorough the
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al
 24 deed; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,
 and rored lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

By the time he
 gets near the
 river the Saracens
 are close upon
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on
 him to turn and
 fight. (3929)

Richard turns and
 kills him, (3932)

and takes his
 horse.
 He rides to the
 bank of Flagot,
 which runs like a
 bolt from a cross-
 bow.

He commends
 himself to God.
 (3949)

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-
 maunded hym self to our lord, that he shold preserue
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd hys message to the
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer
 leueth hys seruantes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard
 of Normandy beyng² in thys medytacyon and thought

¹ orig. pormysed'.

² h iij, back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-white hart,
which goes before
Richard. (3955)

The water rises
till it is level with
the banks.
The hart enters
the river,

and Richard fol-
lows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare
not follow him.

The river sinks to
its usual level.

Galafre lets down
the draw-bridge.
(3976)

Richard is now
safe,

and rides on
slowly.

for to passe ouer, god̃ sente a whyte herte which passed
tofore rychar̃d : & in comyng ye ought to wete that the
ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man
from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4
And̃ the ryuer began to aryse ¹soo hye that it flowed
ouer the banke, and̃ the herte entred̃ in to the water ;
and̃ Rychar̃d loked̃ behynde hym, & sawe many sara-
syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth ; 8
and thenne he recommaunded̃ hym to god̃ wyth good̃
hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body,
hauyng̃ in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he
myȝt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12
passe ouer the ryuere ; and̃ soo toke the water &
folowed̃ the hert. The paynmys seyng̃ that, were al
abasshed and troubled̃, and̃ there was not one that durst
folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water aualed̃, and̃ 16
retorned̃ in to hys former estate and̃ beyng̃. Thenne
the paynmys made grete duel and̃ sorowe by cause they
myȝt not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that
was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20
and̃ aualed̃ the chaynes, and̃ commanded̃ the paynmys,
vpon payne of deth, that they shold̃ not cesse tyl that
rychar̃d were taken, or ellys they shold̃ be all in the
Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and̃ in daunger to be loste. 24
Rychar̃d of Normandye came ouer in good̃ poynte, and̃
deuoutelye thanked̃ god̃ of the grace that he had̃ sente
to hym, and̃ descended̃ fro hys hors for to vngyrde and̃
lose hys sadle. ²And̃ after resengled̃ hym, and̃ took his 28
hors and̃ rode forth at hys ease, and̃ ladde that other
hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore,
For in shōrte tyme he supposed̃ to fynde the excersyte
of kyng̃ Charles. The paynmys seeyng̃ thys, retourned̃ 32
soroufully, & wente to vname them, For other thyng̃e
coude they not do.

¹ h v.

² h v, col. 2.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;

4 & other maters : capitulo v

- I**N as moche as rychard rode, whyche was moche
wery ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng
that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and
many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of
12 Olyuer, to whome he sayd : “ lordes and frendes, I am
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-
parent, whyche is of my specyal barons, whyche were
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that
16 ¹no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyd
I despyse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason
the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-
20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !
For I depose my self from hens forth.” Ganellon was
there which was Ioyeful, what someuer semblaunt he
24 made, and sayd : “ syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I
shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde
that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, &
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,
28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygremore is moche
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete
fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys &
32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that
Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maad crysten,
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

Meanwhile,
Charles is in great
trouble about his
knights. (4004)

He calls his
barons,

tells them his
trouble,

and declares his
intention of re-
signing the crown.
(4015)

Ganelon advises
him to give orders
for a return home,
(4025)

for Balan is too
strong for them,

now that the
douzeperes are
dead.

In time, he says,
their children will
be grown up,

and then Charles
can return and
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons
for grief.

He mourns over
his disgrace.
(4054)

He asks his barons
for their opinions.
(4069)

All Ganelon's
friends support
his advice, (4081)

and declare they
will go no further
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure
you : Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there
many of our chyldren and parents that shal wexe grete ;
and^d or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And^d 4
thenne they with vs ¹shal come in to spayne, for to con-
queste the londes and^d seynouryes that we haue enter-
prysed^d, And^d shal recouure the holy relyques, of whome
I haue grete pyte. And^d more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys
melancolye ; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl doun² in a 12
swoune, And^d spake not the space of a grete houre ; and^d
in wepyng bytterly he sayd^d to hym self : ¶ "O poure
caytyf and^d vnhappy, what shalt thou do ? yf thou re-
torne, þou shalt be dyslionoured^d. yet were it better to 16
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed^d." After that he
was comen to hymself, he sayd^d to hys barons that were
there : "Loo ! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20
wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which
ben thus deteyned^d, there shal neuer man sette by me,
but I shal be shamed^d, and^d wyth good^d ryght." Machayre,
aulbery, and^d geffroy, and^d other, moo than an hondred, 24
whyche al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd^d
alle wyth one consente : "Syr emperour, purpose ³ye
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd^d, For he 28
hath spoken wysely ; and therfor conclude ye to retorne
in to fraunce wythout gooyng ony fether on. we ben
xx thousand^d that haue made oth to-gyder that, for ony
thyng that ye say or do, we shal. not goo noo fether. 32
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr
comforte, & hym that was chyef of the conseruacyon of
their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd^d : "O god^d of

¹ h v, back, col. 2.

² orig. donn.

³ h vj.

- heuen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge
them—He that gaf me suche councyll, loueth me but
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,
aroos vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce
shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted
& brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage,
they retche not, but passe ouer lyghtly.” Thenne they
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”
¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche
wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that
yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and
24 tranqulyte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.
But fyerabras, which was present, blamed themstrongely;
And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef at-
taynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys
they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.
32 Not-withstandyng that, the councyll was taken emonge
them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns
Charles not to
trust Ganelon or
his friends. (4096)

Ganelon's friends
abuse Rayner,
(4103)

who knocks
Alorys down.
(4117)

A great distur-
bance ensues,

which is quieted
by Fierabras and
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party
vow vengeance
against Rayner.

Charles orders
Alors to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.
(4149)

Geoffrey d'Haute-
ville advises
Charles to follow
Ganelon's advice.
(4163)

Charles gives way,

and orders the
retreat home to
France, (4189)

to the great grief
of Rayner and
others. (4195)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore
me, I shal do opene Iustyce. Alwaye nedes must the
kyng be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory¹ on hys
knees cryed duc Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue 4
doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of
kyng charles; & thus they maa^d the pees. And after
themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he torned backe
that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam 8
geffroy daulteuylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd:
"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng,
wherfore me semeth that ye ought to byleue me as wel
as any persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I 12
and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued you, And, how
that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good
ryght. I haue now my body alle to-brused for beryng
of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere 16
be passed, the chyl dren that be now in fraunce shal be
grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a
companye, that lyztely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and
auenge the deth of rolland and of hys other felowes." 20
Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte byt-
terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wyll
retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore
by the sowne of trompettes was cryed the retraytte. 24
And anone the artylleryes were assembled and the
harnois trussed, wherof² the companye of traytres were
Ioyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, &
in especial Reyner, whych retourned withoute hys sone 28
Olyuer, wherof ye may wel thynke in what estate was
hys hert, by cause he hath³ loste al hys comforte.

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

¹ h vj, back.

² h vj, back, col. 2.

³ orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce :
capitulo vj

- 4 **W**Han charles was mounted on horsback, and in
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,
Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them with-
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr : he taryed sayeng :
“ O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe when I now
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blamed. O Rolland,
how I haue loued you ! may euer your vnelle so longe
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged ? God deffende
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoune to
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had : <sup>Charles laments
over the loss of
his barons ; (4207)</sup> <sup>he swoons from
grief. (4221)</sup> moche
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “ Alas ! ” sayd Charles,
“ Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral ! wel am I cause of
al your perdyceyon ! ” In makynge thys heuynes, the
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-
perour loked toward the eest, and from ferre he sawe
rychard come rydyng vpon an hors sore rennyng, and
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and
goo no ferther forth. “ I see,” sayd he, “ yonder comyng
and orders a halt.
(4253)
32 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and
ledeth on hys ryghtsyde a fayr courser, as me thynketh ;
and he semeth by hys rydyng that he is Rychard of
normandy. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys
day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost taryed,
and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

Charles enquires
of Richard how
Roland and the
others are. (4257)

Richard tells him
how they are
besieged by Balan,
(4265)

that they have
Floripas and the
sacred relics,
(4271)

and have sent him
to beg Charles to
come to their
help. (4276)

The king is
pleased,

and says if they
can hold out for
six days he will
deliver them.
(4300)

moche gentlylly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rycharð
of normandye : " Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth
you ? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of 4
myn other ¹barons ? be ye come allone ? be they alyue
or dede ? telle me, I praye you." Rycharð ansuerd :
" Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been 8
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, bysyged by ballant the
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras ; & there been
aboute them an hondred thousa[n]d sarasyns. And
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche 12
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the 16
curtoys doughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue 20
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,
ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a 24
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne alowed in hys
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not
2 but Rolland and hys felowes shold haue dyed. " Now 28
gentyl Rycharð," sayd the kyng, " is the toure in
whyche they been bysyged, stronge & wel garnysshed
of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle ? yf they may
holde vj dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al 32
hys complyces." " Syr," answerd Rycharð, " I shal
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

¹ h vij, col. 2.

² h vij, back.

fyers and ful of cruelte, and hath of people a multytude
 Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.
 the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is
 4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where
 the passage is moche daungerous. and the walles of that
 cyte ben made of marble cymented and fortifyed with
 toures, and there renneth a ryuer ryzt hydous, whyche
 8 is named flagot, and is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,
 & renneth so fast and brayeth, that there is noo bote ne
 shyppe may passe theron. and the brydge is half a myle
 longe, And in the myddes there is a toure¹ of marble
 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon; & the yate is
 garnysshed & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked.
 ¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous
 and grete, massyf, stronge and ²felonnous, whyche bet-
 16 ter resembleth the deuyll than any man or persone. he
 is as blacke as pytche boyled, & hath x thousand
 knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by
 force we may not passe; For by ony assaulte that may
 20 be doon to them, they doubt it not. And yf we passe
 not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the
 brydge; For by force we may noo thyng do. but it
 byhoueth vs to passe in guyse of marchaunts; And
 24 somme of vs shal be wel armed vnder our clothes; and
 there aboute we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr
 swerdes vnder, And there shal come after vs grete som-
 myers charged with marchaundyses. And ye wyth al
 28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that euery
 man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue goten
 the fyrst gate, I shal sounne & blowe myn horne, And
 wyth motye ye shal come on. And thus we shal haue
 32 the passage, by the playsyr of god, and we shal come to
 our entencyon." Thys counceyl was wel approued by
 the kyng Charles, whyche ofte blessyd richard by cause
 he had so wel sayd, & thenne he resembled al his peple.

Richard tells him
 that the tower is
 surrounded by the
 Saracens,

and that he will
 have to pass the
 bridge of Mantri-
 ble, (4309)

which is kept by
 a giant,

as black as pitch,
 with 10,000 men.
 (4321)

He proposes a plan
 by which they
 may pass it by,
 disguising some
 knights as mer-
 chants. (4345)

Charles approves
 of the plan. (4356)

¹ orig. toure.

² h vij, back, col. 2.

Five hundred
French knights
disguise them-
selves as mer-
chants, (4369)

and start on,

while the others
lie hid in a wood.
(4400)

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerd. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente & ¹bonde heye and grasse to-gydre, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4 chautes. euery man wel armed vnder hys cloke, & swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hon- 8 dred knyghtes, alle men of grete facyon, and dryue to- fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nautes folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyuer, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12 taryeng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

¶ How by the moyen & counceyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16 strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne; And what maner man galafre was: capitulo .vij

Richard and his
party ride on,

driving the pack-
horses before
them. (4395)

His companions
are frightened at
the sight of the
river and the
strength of the
bridge. (4405)

THemperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20 abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of nor- mandye, hoel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other peple whyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on the waye to goo toward man-²tryble, and ladde wyth 24 them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes of Rychard sawe the ryuer of flagot so roryng, And thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed. For, for to come thyder by assaulte, alle the pyssaunce of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they aualed the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de 32 maunded of Rychard: "What may there be of this

¹ h viij.

² h viij, col. 2.

place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men 4 of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst 8 yate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynims: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns 12 but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; 16 & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so 20 hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflammed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyled pytche; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote 24 longe, his eeres so grete that they myzt conteyne wel half a busschel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued 28 hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the kepyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of 32 that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knowen of hym. For yf there had ony be knowen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4413)

Galafre sees them coming. (4427)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4445)

Galafre challenges
the French
knights. (4451)

Richard tells him
they are mer-
chants on their
way to the fairs,

and bearing pre-
sents to Balan.
(4456)

Galafre says that
twelve Frenchmen
had passed the
bridge without
paying toll, (4475)

as well as a
messenger,

who had slain his
cousin Clarion,
(4487)

wherefore Balan
had ordered him
to let no one pass,

nener none haue escaped but he shold haue ben dede. Thus, thenne, whan they were ¹at mantryble, Rychard passed afore. and whan he was at the entre of the gate, Galafre came to hym & sayd: "vassal, what are ye? 4 wherefore come ye hyther?"

¶ Rychard, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage, & began aragon, and sayd: "Syr, I am a marchaunte whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8 chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and wyl goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at Aygremore, we shold soiourne there, and gyue to thad- 12 myral somme precyous yestes that we here brynge. These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al esclauens, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr, we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16 waye we ought to goo." Galafre ansuerd: "knowe ye, that I am kepar of the brydge and of the passages that been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- 20 sagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord thadmeral kepeth them in pryson, And one of them that other day escaped preuily away as a theef, whiche 24 rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & ²passed ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn the kyng Clarion, for whome I am in grete melancolye. now wold god Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28 brydge, I shold cleue hym vnto the myddle of his bely wythout to haue ony mercy or pyte on hym.

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed mahon and the 32 paynym lawe for to become crysten. And he commaunded me thre tymes that I shold not suffre ony persone, lord, knyght, ne seruytour, to passe, And that

I shold^d serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of theym that come thys waye. Therefore I wyl knowe what ye be." Rycharð heryng thys, bowed^d his hede :

unless he is known. (4501)

4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and Reyner of genes goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he began to doubte, and^d sayd^d to them that there shold^d

Raoul and two others pass on to the bridge. (4509)

nomoo entre, and^d auauenced^d hym and drewe vp the brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche

Galafre raises the bridge, (4514)

he dred^d not, and^d sayd^d to them in grete fyerste : "ye are ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my commaundemente, And^d therfor ye four shal be sette in

12 pryson, and^d the other that come after you also. And^d to-morn I shal sende you prysoners ¹ to my lord thadmyrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there

and calls on them to surrender. (4517)

16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus sayeng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby foure tymes aboute : "By god," sayd^d Ryol, "I may no lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;

20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded !" And^d therwyth he threwe of his cloke, and^d smote vpon the paynym ; but he was so strongely armed^d that he myght do hym no harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rycharð

Raoul strikes at him,

24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and^d eche of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and^d maylled^d.

and cuts off a piece of his ear.

¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and^d supposed for to haue smyton Ryol, and^d enhaunced hys axe that was grete and^d heuy and^d also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke

The others ent at him, but cannot hurt him. (4541)

32 come, and was habylle, and^d lepte a syde, and^d the stroke smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted^d.

Galafre cuts at Raoul with his axe, (4552)

but misses him.

Rayner knocks
Galafre down with
a branch of a tree.
(4563)

1000 Saracens
assemble. (4573)

Richard lets
down the bridge,
and the 500
knights enter.
(4581)

Then he blows his
horn, (4575)

and Charles with
all his men come
up, (4587)

Ganelon in front.
(4589)

“Ha! god of heuen!” sayd Rēyner, “how he
smyteth oultrageously! ¹I am al abasshed of the puyss-
saunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne
gryeue.” He thus sayeng, he took a grete braunche of 4
a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduysed and
marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth
in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to
therthe; & whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye 8
so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made
grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyms of man-
tryble were moeued and assembled, that within a lytel
whyte there were redy armed moo than x thousand. 12
there was thenne a grete commocyon; Rychard of Nor-
mandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed down
the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred
knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth 16
them; but at the entre of the gate the paynyms en-
countred them: there was a grete medle and recountre;
many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there
slayne and hurte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned 20
it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood
it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his
puyssaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly,
and there was not one that cessed to renne tyl he came 24
to the brydge. ²¶ Ganelon, whyche after was tray-
tour, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that
cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reysed; but the
loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured 28
not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe,
by the playsyr of god.

¶ How by force and’ strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred’ in to mantryble, after that 32
Galafre was slayn, not wythstandyng’ that

¹ i j, back.

² i j, back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym;
and' many other maters: capitulo viij

- 4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people &
confounded, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns. In the fight at the gate of Mantrible
and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome Charles and Ganelon bear them well. (4595)
he attayned wyth hys swerde named Ioyouse, he must nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway
8 by hym Ganelon, whych dyd wel hys deuoyr. The dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin many were drowned. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore, and hys people after, He sawe galafre on þe grounde, Charles sees that Galafre is not dead,
12 which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone, And helde alwaye hys axe in hys honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrtty frenssh men. And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunded to slee hym; & so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete, that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd; wherfore there came L thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the cytyzeyns of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo
24 stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquere or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geauzt moche fyers, named Ampheon, And had a wyf named Amyotte. And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde, and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe, as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, & helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf,
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyth hys voys tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed: "Where is charles the kyng of fraunce? wyl he now bere wyth hym the amongst them a giant and giantess, named Ampheon and Amyot. (4652)
Ampheon challenges Charles, (4669)

and threatens
him. (4672)

Charles attacks
Ampheon,
and with his
sword cuts him in
two. (4686)

Charles calls for
help. (4693)
Richard and three
others join him,

and drive the
Saracens back
into the town.
(4699)

The Saracens
surround them.
(4703)

relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I
comforte my self, it were better ¹for hym, olde dotard,
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-
taynly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer 4
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &
hanged alle quyeke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after
that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were 8
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth
in hys courage, & sette hys shielde tofore hym, wyth hys 12
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came arter hym
ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym
soo myghtely that he clefted hym in two pyeces, & 16
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maað hym falle
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherefore the
Sarasyns were all moeued and affrayed, And as people
enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, 20
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rycharl
of Normandye, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24
Syr Ryol du mauns, ²whyche alle had courage lyke vnto
lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the pay-
nyms to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette
it, in makynge grete defence with bowes and other shotte,
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,
which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue 32
thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept
ayenst the sarasyns by the frenssh men. There was

¹ i ij, col. 2.

² i ij, back.

grete bruyt in thys recountre; And though Charles
doubted, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that
yf the sarasyns had lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of
4 the towne, It had not be possyble to hym to haue passed
ouer. And he, seeyng them reyse vp toward the yate
grete barres of yron, supposed not to haue passed, And
wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland
8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer
haue seen them.

Charles is almost
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard of Normandye consyderyng thys, escryed
and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye
12 you not, but thynke to destroye and smyte down these
Turkes, and god shal ayde & helpe vs. Ye knowe wel
that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl
acoward hymself, but that he ought to be despysed, and
16 wyth good ryght. ¶ And I praye to god that he be
confounded that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for
to dye afterward, and that had not leuer be hewen in
pyeces than to retorne. And wythoute more, late vs
20 auance vs, For now it is nede that eche man proue hys
strengthe and the valure of hys persone." Wyth these
wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne,
Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard, These fyue
24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And ye
ought to wete that they entred not wythout grete
slaughter of turkes and of Paynymys.

Richard encour-
ages him, (4715)

and the fyve push
forward into the
town. (4725)

Charles, seyng come grete multytude of sarasyns,
28 cryed "a larme and socours" moche hye and furyously.
Ganellon vnderstood hym, and had of hym grete pyte;
Not wythstondyng at the laste he founde hym not good;
& came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the
32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed moche rychely
to the nombre of M vij C, and al they came afote for to
assayle the yate. The turkes maad grete deffence wyth
brondes and barres of yron and mortal shotte, where as

Charles calls for
assistance.
Ganellon hears
him,

and wishes to
help him. (4729)

¹many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Alorys presses Ganelon to retire, and leave Charles to his fate. (4739)

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys 4 torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empresshed: god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel 8 see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auengel of the contradyctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And euyldeth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wynne Fraunce at our ease and wylle, & holde it wythout contradyctyon, 12 Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarye." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorie forbede that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryztful lord! we holde of hym al our londes & seynouryes. I shold 16 be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon: 20 "ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we shal be aduenged on al our e²nemyes. Ther- 24 fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne that I leue hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed 28 and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were euyld contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them. Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete 32 poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

"God forbid!" says Ganelon. (4753)

Alorys calls him a fool; (4759)

but Ganelon is faithful to Charles. (4765)

Fierabras comes up, and asks where Charles is, (4775)

¶ The Traytre answerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

dede now." Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge
 you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure
 ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of
 4 treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye
 "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all
 the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng', to the
 belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganelon, that thenne
 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he
 sawe that the brydge was not drawn up, And thenne
 he and Ganelon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre
 12 in to the cyte. ¹And whan they were wythin, & the
 traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely
 theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth
 the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode
 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that
 eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynmys cryed
 and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that
 they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad-
 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon
 & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but
 for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute
 of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllled of theyr rychesses
 24 and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doynge, a messenger
 departed secretly for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte
 and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

and calls on them
 to succour him.
 (4780)

Fierabras and
 Ganelon fight
 nobly,

and the town is
 won. (4792)

The Saracens send
 to Balan for help.
 (4800)

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe
 28 greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how
 hyr two sones were baptysed of the Em-
 perour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were
 gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe
 & herd the crye of the cytezeyns, whiche ²were

¹ i iij, back.

² i iij, back, col. 2.

Amyot the giant-
ess rushes out,
armed with a
scythe,

and slays numbers
of the French.
(4820)

Charles shoots her
with a cross-bow.
(4832)

The town is
sacked. (4845)

Charles remains
at Mantrible three
days. (4841)

He finds the
children of the
giantes. Amyot,
whom he causes
to be baptised,
under the names
of Roland and
Oliver. (4865)

troubled,—She was as blacke as pytche boyled: hyr
eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: she had a grete
vysage & coked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely
affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond, & also aferde for 4
hyr ij sones, of whyche she was late delyuerd;—soo she
in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe
trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon
the frensshe men so Impetuously that she maad grete 8
dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel ap-
proche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl con-
tente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse
bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12
he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl
doun deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr
throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles,
she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16
she neuer moeued after; wherfore after that, the yates
of the towne and other deffences were not kepte ne
defended, but that Charles dyd his wyll of alle.
¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20
the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel
refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded.
For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place ¹was so
stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24
kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and
smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he
abode thre dayes in departyng ²& destributyng the
goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28
And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot,
In a caue were founden the ij sones, yonge chyldren, of
the fornamed geauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was
wel Ioyous, and were baptysed; & one he named Roul- 32
land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to
be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they
were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

¹ i iij.

² orig. dapartyng.

themperour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgetyon, charles made to come to hym Rychard of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nautes, Ryol of mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed balant the admyral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rychard answerd: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe þ^e brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand men." ¹and lyke as Rychard sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of this people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssaunce sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente." After that he had sayd thus, he blessyd hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth his waye. And the sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrtene contreyes. the frenssh men rode forth: Rychard of normandy was in the auaunte garde, And the Duke Reyner² in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted, ³ wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Charles consults as to whom he shall leave in charge of Mantrible. (4875)

By the advice of Richard Howel and Raoul are left there with 5000 men. (4881)

Charles, seeing the magnitude of his forces, thanks God. (4907)

He has 100,000 men.

Balan is told of the death of Galafre, and the capture of Mantrible. (4923)

¹ i iij, col. 2.

² orig. Reyuer.

³ i iij, bk.

In great grief and
rage he curses
Mahoun, (4927)

and smashes his
image. (4939)

Sortibrant advises
him to repent and
humble himself
before his gods,
(4943)

and to send out
spies to see if
Charles is coming.
(4951)

Balan is per-
suaded and
repents. (4963)

man fro hym self, sayeng^t: “ha! ha! god mahon! thy power is nought. O cursyd^t god & recreaunte, thou art nothyng^t worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and^t hast 4 consented to my dyschonour, as I now wel see, whych ouztest wel to haue doon the contrarye.” Thys sayeng^t, the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, & ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8 soo grete a stroke vpon the heed^t, that he fyl down, & was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynyns were not wel abused^t, they myght knowe clerely theyr Infydelyte and^t fals creauunce, for to Inuoque the ymages 12 that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and^t haue no consolacion. A lytel vnderstandyng and lacke of wytte, & also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16 Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng^t the desolacyon of thadmyral, counceylled^t hym, that as moche as he myght, to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon. Thadmyral said to hym: “I may not enclyne to do to 20 hym obeyssaunce, Seeyng^t that Charles hath wonne by his puyssaunce my cyte and stronge tour ¹of mantryble, where as I had^t my laste comforte to kepe me moost sure.” Sortybrant ansuerd: “Syr admyral, sende forth 24 an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh hyther ageynst you; And^t yf it be soo, late vs ryde ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And^t yf ye may, late hym be taken, and^t hange hys people, or brenne them, 28 without ony mercy or pyte. And^t thenne after ye may caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and smyte of the heed^t of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth them.” Whan the admyral ballant had herde Sorty- 32 brant, consyderyng^t hys affectyon, humbly he retorned to mahon, purposyng^t to do as he had^t sayd^t.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled'
more strongly than euer they were, And'
the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-
4 fortified' by the holy relyques, by them
adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayed^d soo moche thadmyral, & with
hym the olde kyngⁱ Coldroe tempestet^d hym, &
8 brullant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had^d
doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold^d make amendes.
The admyral beyng content for their ¹affectyon, sware
that he shold^d encrease Mahon, and^d Augment of a thou-
12 sand wey³t, after their custome, of fyn gold^d and other
precyosytees. And^d anone dyd^d do sowne trompettes
and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were
assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed^d. And the
16 admyral maad^d to brynge hys engynes for to throwe
grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and^d also
for to destroye the frensshe men & hys doughter. And^d
thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for
20 tassayle the toure, and^d laye theyr engynes therto ; wyth
whyche the paynyns made fyue grete hooles in the
toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his
ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland^d, wyth
24 theyr sheldes tofore them, and^d theyr swerdes in theyr
hondes, stode in the wyndowes, and^d yet they were not
soo hardy emonge them but that they were abasshed^d,
not wythstondyngⁱ they had^d good^d wylle to defende
28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with
stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he
dyd^d them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyn^g, thad-
myral cryed^d : " O my friendes and^d subgettes, doo your
32 deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure ; For yf ye so
do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles
himself before his
gods,

and promises
them gifts. (4965)

He orders batter-
ing-engines to be
brought up
against the tower.
(4979)

Five great
breaches are
made in the wall.
(4987)

Roland and
Oliver defend the
tower well.
(4991)

Balan threatens
his daughter.

The Saracens
swarm in at the
breaches. (5011)

Roland cheers on
the French
knights.

Oliver proposes a
sally. (5020)

Floripas encour-
ages them, (5039)

and they drive
the Saracens
back,

and stop up the
breaches.

¹make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a
brennyng^r fyre, for she hath wel deserued^t it, doyn^rg to
me the dys^honour that euery man knoweth." ¶ After
these wordes the paynims were more feruent than they 4
had^t ben tofore, & surmounted^t by strengthe, scaled^t
the toure, and^t mounted^t vp, and^t entred in at holes, in
suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þ^e last
stage that was. Rolland seyng^r thys, sayd^t to them: 8
"lordes & brethern! in thonour of god^t our māker, late
vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal
not passe thys day, but that we shāl be surprysed,
taken, and^t defeated^t." "Brother & felowe," sayd^t 12
Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shāl
please our creatour, & we been al good^t fyghtars. In
the name of God^t, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to
assayle our enemyes. I had^t leuer to dye there withoute, 16
and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth
dys^honour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd^t
semblably. Florypes, seeyng^r thys, was al abasshed^t,
and^t demaunded^t the barons yf they wold goo out for to 20
goo assaylle the paynims, & sayd^t to them: "ye noble
knyghtes of honour & of good^t partye, I praye to god^t
that at this tyme yeue you grace to doo wel, And I
promyse you ²yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I 24
shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shāl be Ioyeful."
wyth tho wordes³ the barons goo smyte and^t hewe down
the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede
& hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote 28
them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they
were caste in to the dyches and drowned^t. And^t anone
as they had^t goten thoo holes, they stopped^t them & faste
enclosed^t them. and^t after florypes axed fyrst of naymes 32
duc of bauyere, & of Thyerry duc of Ardayne, and^t
sayd^t: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed^t me, and sware,
that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wylle. I

¹ i v, col. 2.

² i v, back.

³ orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the
 nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I
 haue long kept." The barons heryng¹ thys, wepte for
 4 Ioye, & sworn to hyr that they shold^d do no thyng to
 hyr, but al loyalte and^d trouthe. Florypes wente thenne
 and^d fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and^d tofore
 them she opened^d it; & assone as the relyques were taken
 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a
 meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripas brings
 out the sacred
 relics, (5045)

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, deu-
 outely smytyng¹ them self on their brestes by con-
 12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes ¹of bauyere was the
 fyrst that kyssed^d them wyth grete reuerence, & the
 other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the
 paynymys were mounted on hye. And^d assone as they
 16 sawe them, they tombled^d down to þ^e grounde, dede, & al
 to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O
 lord^d god^d of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke
 the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see
 20 wel and^d knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we
 haue ofte spoken." And^d Incontynent he took hardynes
 and courage, and^d after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern,
 now we be recomforted, so that we shal neuer fere ne
 24 doubte paynymys ne sarasyns." And^d after, Florypes
 remysed^d the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-
 myral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dought-
 er wyth them; & he, ful of a fals entencyon, escryed^d
 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wold^d be vnder-
 stonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where
 thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted^d
 the, & ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thyn
 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst pryson-
 ers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that
 trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Importaunce, is a moche
 fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal ²not endure

which the knights
 kiss with great
 reuerence. (5052)

At the sight of
 the relics the
 Saracens fall
 down dead from
 the walls. (5065)

Balan sees his
 daughter at a
 window and
 abuses and
 threatens her.
 (5088)

¹ i v, back, col. 2.

² i vj.

Floripas threatens
him with a stick.
(5093)

The Saracens
make a furious
assault and a
great part of the
wall is broken
down. (5101)

The French use
the Saracen idols
as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons
with rage, (5117)

and again abuses
his gods. (5123)

Sortibrant
reproves him,
(5127)

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4
made a sygne as though she had menaced hyr fader;
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to
gadre hys peple, and comaunded to shote & lose the
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe.
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynims, whyche were
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynims: Olyuer
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20
hys courage, that for sorowe he tombled down as a dede
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete ¹desolacyon for
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24
he shal euer be my frende & specyal byloued, þat wyl
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte
hym, sayeng that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than
xv partyes." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou
hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32
the day that þou haddest grete puyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

¹ i vj, col. 2.

there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good a god:
 he gyueth vs plente¹ of whete, of wyn, and of other
 goodes also; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought
 4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye
 smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better
 aduyseð, And the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto
 you soo that ye shal holde you pleased." Vpon these
 8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And a deuyl
 entred in to hym, whyche sayð in thys manere after
 that he had adoured hym: "Admyral, ryche lord, ne
 dyscomfort you not: do sowne your trompettes &
 12 hornes, ²and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the
 toure; and at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe
 men." wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyced,
 and alle thengynes and Instrumentes he dyð do sette
 16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and maad grete shotte
 ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and
 almost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seynge
 thys, had grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout
 20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayð to hys
 felawes: "O loyal companyons, replenysshed of fy-
 delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late
 none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in
 24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and cowardyse.
 ye see now þat the tour gooth to grounde, And almost
 these sarasyns be medled wyth vs. But as touchynge
 to me, I swere by god my maker, that tofore my soule
 28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to
 holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so
 grete a dyscomfytur of these paynyns, that euery man
 shal meruaylle." With these wordes Rolland byhelde
 32 durandal; and Olyuer, with eueryche of the other, by-
 helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe
 and courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the
³sarasyns, and there dyð suche dylygence, that alle-

and begs him to
 haue patience.

A false devil,
 under the form of
 Mahoun,

urges Balan to
 renew the
 assault,
 promising him
 success. (5140)

Balan is delighted,
 and orders his
 men up again.
 (5147)

The French are
 almost in despair,

but are comforted
 by Ogier, (5171)

and they drive
 the Saracens
 back again.
 (5180)

¹ orig. pleute.

² i vj, back.

³ i vj, back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-
yng^t theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to
hem, and^t also remembryng^t the menaces of hyr fader 4
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted^t hyr
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges
of¹ thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; 8
and' how Ganellon bare hym merueyllously,
which allone was sente to the admyral, and'
what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

Naymes from a
window sees
Charles and his
army coming.
(5207)

THe Frensshe men beyng^t in thys contynuel payn 12
of bataylle for to defende þ^e toure, Duc Naymes of
bauyere went vp on hye, and^t sawe oute of a wyndowe,
& sawe bynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16
of men of armes: And^t thought in hym self that they
came for to socour and^t ayde them. and^t anone sent
for hyz felawes for to come & see them. Assone as
Florypes vnderstood^t it, she came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20
sayeng: "O glorious ²vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,
worschypped^t mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue
herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere
loue, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and^t kysse 24
me." Of the loye of Florypes, were loyeful the erles
and^t lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-
forted^t whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin
was the dragon wel figured^t. Grete loye and grete 28
consolacion was emonge them, & they had^t cause, seen
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam
to thadmyral, & sayd^t to hym, that Charles wyth an
hondred thousand^t men of armes came makyng^t grete 32
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe counceyllid^t anone that

Floripas thanks
God for the news,
(5223)

and they all
rejoice.

A messenger
tells Balan that
the French army
is coming. (5231)

¹ orig. yf.

² i vij.

euery man shold be armed, and that they shold goo mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-

4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to

He sends 50,000 men to meet them.

thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore.

Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandye wyth hys con-

8 fanon reysed vp, whyche came al afore: and alle

taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr

horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was

nyghe. And wythoute makynge lodgyses or other

The French bivouac for the night. (5251)

12 thyng, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr

tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the

Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good

araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-

16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou

knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I

loue the the better. yf thou myztest pourchace and

make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon

In the morning Charles tells Fierabras that if Balan will be baptised he shall keep all his kingdom. (5263)

20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and

Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes

I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I

promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf

24 he take harne, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre,

for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-

bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym,

yf he wyl soo doo. as ye say, and I shal be content.

Fierabras advises Charles to send a messenger to his father. (5275)

28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne

haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye."

Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of

Normandye, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and

32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost pro-

pyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall?

By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he

wold, for to recounthe & speke hooly thys message. I

Charles proposes to send Ganelon. (5283)

¹ i vij. col. 2.

² i vij. back.

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he
 dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye
 wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rycharð
 answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4
 message. The kyng sente for ganellon, and sayd to
 hym : "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say
 to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysed & renye
 mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8
 that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-
 fred for al humayn creatures ; & after, that he yelde to
 me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, &
 also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12
 hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal leue to hym hys
 contreye & hys landes : & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we
 shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym
 no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16
 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted
 vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke
 his shelde, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went
 in to the vale of Iosue hastily. and anone he was 20
 taken of the turkes that kept the passage ; but whan
 they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to
 thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo,
 & he taryed ¹not tyl that he came tofore thabytacyon of 24
 thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly
 countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete
 valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral
 knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28
 Ganellon spake hardyly to hym in this manere : "Sara-
 syn, take hede & vnderstonde me : I am a messenger of
 the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty
 Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32
 renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dya-
 bolyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al
 the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

Richard approves
 of this,

and Charles sends
 for Ganelon

and gives him
 his instructions.
 (5291)

Ganelon arms
 himself,
 and starts. (5307)

He rides up to
 Balan's tent,
 (5322)

and delivers his
 message to the
 Sultan, (5325)

¹ i vij, back, col. 2.

- deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the¹ crosse, for to redeme al the world. & yf thou so do, thou art assured not ouely [not] to deye, & also not to lese thy
- 4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou wilt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for certayn, that of Charles thou art deffied, & al thy people.
- 8 & yf thou wilt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wythdrawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth, and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,
- 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royame and thy rychesses to his ²seruauntes. Therfore aduyse the wel." Whan thadmyral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys
- wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for
- 16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by mahon, to whome I am yeuen, at thys tyme thou hast be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente
- 20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt neuer recounte to hym thy message." Ganellon, seyng that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a
- 24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche seyng that, escryed moche strongly tauenge hym. Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty
- 28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganellon, whyche ranne after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escaped them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a wyndowe, and sawe hym chaced, & demaunded Rolland
- 32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayn that he was crysten, and by presumyng made emonge them they Iudged that it was Ganellon that had spoken to thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

calling on him to become Christian on pain of death. (5337)

Balan, in a rage, threatens him with a stick. (5343)

Ganelon draws his sword and cuts down Brullant. (5353)

Balan calls on his men to seize Ganelon,

but he rides off and escapes. (5360)

The knights in the tower recognize him. (5371)

¹ orig. ithe.

² i viij.

Ganelon turns on
his pursuers,

and slays two of
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this
feat,

and wishes he
were with him.
(5395)

The Saracens
pursue Ganelon

till they see the
army of Charles.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte ¹hym grace to
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf
he come not to his good desyre." ¶ The other barons
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4
Ganelon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of
a montayne, and there he turned hym ayenst the
Paynyms, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of
the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8
named murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned the
paynym vpon the helme, and clefte hym to the breste:
And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of
kyng¹ Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd 12
to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys
baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And
wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you &
charles, I loue none better. Now wold god that I 16
were in hys companye, I shold make grete marterdom
on these Paynyms." Neuertheles he was strongly
chaced of the paynyms. But whan they sawe the
hoost of Charles, they retorned aback, and wente & 20
tolde the affayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo
than an hondred thousand fyghtyng men. wherfore
they counceyllled that euery man shold arme hym, &
that counceyl was approued. but whan sortybrant 24
²knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an
Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in
menacyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys entencion
was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28
come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned ten
bataylles, and how they dyd' & were
recountred' of the puyssaunce of the 32
admyral, where as themperour dyd' mer-
uaylles, and' of other maters: capitulo xij

¹ i viij, col. 2.

² i viij, back.

- W**Han Ganellon was comen to kyng¹ Charles,
 themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that
 4 Ganellon had tolde hys message, whyche was suche :
 “ Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth
 you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was
 wel happy that I escaped, For I haue been chased
 8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold
 haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr
 kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.
 And anone they sowned hornes and trompettes, & was
 12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-
 land herde the sowne, and the voys of ¹the frensshe
 hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced &
 made good chyere. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al
 16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of
 them. after, as I haue sayd tofore, kyng charles made
 ten bataylles : In the fyrst, he ordeyned Rychard of
 Normandy ; Duc Reyner of genes had the second,
 20 Ganellon the thyrd, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the
 fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius
 the viij, Sampson the ix, And of the tenthe was con-
 duytour charles the kyng. & in eche bataylle were x
 24 thousand men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan
 Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng comyng, he sayd
 to brullant, “ who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in
 to bataylle with an hondred thousand paynymys ;”
 28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them
 ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes.
 & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant
 began to goo a grete bowedrauzt tofore the other, and
 32 began to crye “ haro ! haro ! where is charles themper-
 our wyth his euyl chere ? loo ! I come to the ! thou
 hast enterprysed a grete folye whan thou passest the
 see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

Ganelon reports
the result of the
message to
Charles, (5439)

who divides his
army into 10
divisions, and
prepares for
battle. (5453)

Richard leads the
vanguard, (5455)

and Charles
himself the rear.
(5457)

Balan bids
Brullant to attack
the French first
with 100,000 men.
(5459)

Brullant rides out
and challenges
Charles. (5471)

¹ i viij. back, col. 2.

Charles charges
at him,

and slays him,
(5485)

and afterwards
many more of the
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a
Saracen king,
makes great
havoc amongst
the French,
(5523)

but is himself
slain by Richard.

The French force
the pass,
and approach
Balan's division.
(5563)

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf. And ¹wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thadmyral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Themperour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a furye ⁴ he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, & attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnois brake, and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a ⁸ turke kynge of pyetree, and smote hym in the breste that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd; for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At ¹² that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that were lyuyng were lette by them that were dede. ¹⁶ Thenne emonge the paynyms there was a turke, named Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt vpon the frensse men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & ²⁰ smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth huon, and guernyer thauncyen, and after sayd to the frensse men that on that day Charles and hys sub- ²⁴ gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of ²Normandye had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, & attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his hawberke, and brake his shelde in quarters, & so smote ²⁸ hym, that he fyl down deed wythout any more reprochyng & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssaunce, whyche ³² was accompanied wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote. Anone a messenger came to the admyral, & tolde hym

¹ k j.

² k j, col. 2.

how brullant his brother was dede, and many in hys
 companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe,
 & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost speecal
 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe
 frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion
 to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles
 the kyng¹. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concluded
 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone;
 & sythe I shal deye ones, it suffyseth me that I myght
 slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I
 deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I
 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consydering^t thastate
 of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyng^t
 hym.

Balan determines
 to seek out and
 engage Charles in
 single combat.

¹¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng^t, Sortybrant
 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer,
 and after how thadmyral dyd^t meruaylles
 and^t grete ennoye to the frensshe men:
 capitulo xiiij

20 **B**Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste
 rennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armed,
 and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete
 of body, well membreck, & had^t hys berde hangyng^t to
 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do
 sowne hys trompettes & hornes tassemble his hoost, &
 made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shiote
 wyth bowes turquoys, & al furyously that one ayenst
 28 the other goo shiote, and make mortal warre, so that the
 shiote flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche
 people was there slayn that the wayes were empessed
 & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passed^t
 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was
 kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with-
 out faynyng, that hys shelde auaylled^t hym not; hys

A general engage-
 ment ensues,

and the slaughter
 is immense.
 (5516)

Reyner attacks
 and slays
 Sortibrant.

¹ k j, back.

Balan grieves
over the death of
Sortibrant.

He charges into
the French,

and slays Huon of
Milan and 20
others. (5574)

Ganelon and his
friends make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued
by Ganelon.

hauberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there
deed lyke a beest; & after, wyth hys swerde made so
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, *pat* it was 4
meruaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of
Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte
in a rage, and sythe sayd: "O Sortybrant, my special
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8
venge not thy deth." with thyse wordes he maad his
hors to renne vpon þ^e frenssh men so despytously that
whome he attayned he put to deth, and came to huon
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd grete dom- 12
mage, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche
valyantly, sayeng: ¶ "O ye vnhappy frensshe men, I
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I
shal lede awaye with me the kyng Charles with his
florissshed berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes." &
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed them in
suche wyse *pat* they dyd gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & *pat* lygnage, dyd
gretely theyr deuoyr and bare them wel. For in a shorte
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynyns.
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, ²attayned 28
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and after he
took hym, & layed hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued hym,
notwythstondyng that many of theym were slayn and
dede. Neuertheles the fiensshe men surmounted the

¹ k j, back, col. 2.

² k ij.

paynymys, and that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which for loue of Charles dyd fyght, and made grete dyscomfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth
 4 Tempeste, and the olde Rubyon, and moo than fyfty other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays more than 50 Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in the toure came oute whan they sawe the hoost, & how thadmyral was taken & holden prysonner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynymys & frensshe men, alwaye perseuer- yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende, eche one of other, For the multytude of the paynymys was so grete that they myzt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan the barons that were in the tour sawe the fayt, & that they that kepte the toure were goon to the socours and crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French knights, seeing the battle, sally out, and seizing each a stray horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond, & sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh them to the frensshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that the moost hardyest of the paynymys gaf them waye, &

charge the Saracens, and force their way through them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and in especyal rolland, for where he smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at thys departyng was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

28 they were assembled wyth the other, wythoute letyng them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þe sperhawke than the sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

scattering them like larks before the hawk, (5550)

hys destructyon by the comyngⁱ of the peres that were
 in þ^e toure, & cryed^t wyth an h[y]e voys: "mahon, my
 god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to
 so moche honour, thou hast forgotten¹ me! Remembre 4
 me now! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the
 bothe flankes,² hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,
 fals recreaunt god that thou art." he thus sayengⁱ, he
 was so pursyewed^t and smyton that he fyl down vnder 8
 his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of
 hys sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduysed^t
 to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &
 bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12
 took an ende; and he that wold not be conuerted^t was
 incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme
 were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men
 wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there hys 16
 barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial
 his neuw rolland, & Olyuer, whom he loued so moche,
 & were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd^t ne
 expressed^t the Ioye that was emonge them; & the con- 20
 solacyon & reioycyngⁱ of kyngⁱ charles was Inestymable.
 Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend^t
 to them, & of theyr daungers and leopardyes whiche
 they had escape^t, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24
 had endured^t, wherfore Charles and many other wept for
 pyte. And thys endured^t many dayes, there where as
 the hurt men & seek were heeled^t, & they that were
 hole passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28
 Ioye.

Balan invokes his
 god Mahon (5569)

with threats.

He is unhorsed
 and taken
 prisoner, (5647)

and the battle
 ends. (5681)

There is great
 rejoicing over the
 safety of the
 knights. (5670)

The army rests
 some days to
 recruit their
 strength.

³¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-
 cyon that was shewed^t to hym, wold not
 be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32
 goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

¹ orig. forygoten.

² k ij, back.

³ k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she quene of that contreye :
capitulo XV

- 4 **W**Han charles had al appeased, he took ballant the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche, 8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue honour and reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe, & al that therein enhabyteth. Wherefore by good ryght he is superyour and abouen al; And a grete abusyon is comprysed in hym which gyueth fayth and hope in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of mater dede, Insensyble, and that hath neyther reson ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wherefore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and for the preseruyng of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou take awaye alle these Iniquytees and peruerse affectyons, 20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, and holy ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and byleue that the sone of god, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader adam, descended in to thys world, and took humanyte 24 in the wombe of the blessed vyrgyn marie, whyche was al pure and wythoute spotte. And byleue in the artycles of the fayth, and obeye and kepe hys comandementes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and 28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and by enuy hanged on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes of helle. Byleue hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy 32 baptesme whyche he hath establysshed, wyth the other sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus byleue thou shalt be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes."

Charles sends for Balan, (5719)

and, declaring the evil and folly of idolatry,

calls on him to forsake it,

and to believe in God, (5724)

and the articles of the Christian faith.

He recounts Christ's crucifixion, resurrection, and ascension,

and says that if he will be converted, nothing shall be taken from him. (5722)

Balan swears he
will never forsake
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens
him with death.
(5756)

Fierabras inter-
cedes for his
father, who
agrees to be
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-
pared, (5789)

but Balan spits in
it, and nearly
kills the bishop,
(5809)

who is saved by
Ogier.

Fierabras again
intercedes for
Balau, (5813)

but Floripas urges
Charles to put
him to death at
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue
Mahon. Themperour holdyng^t a naked swerd, sayd to
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seying^t thys, kneled^t down to
herthe, & prayed^t hys fader to do as the emperour had^t
sayd. Thadmyral fered^t the deth, & sayd that he was
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth ¹fayr water in
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.
& after, whan thadmyral was vncladde, the bysshop 12
demaunded^t hym, sayeng^t: "Syr ballant, forsake ye
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your
trespaces? and byleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of
the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshop,
& wold haue drowned^t hym in the fonte, and had^t
plonged^t hym therin, ne had not Ogier haue been, 20
whyche letted^t hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abashed^t
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24
Fyerabras: "ye be my specyal frende, Ye see that your
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oultrage that
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred^t hym yet of a lytel pacyence,
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the doughter of the Admyrall, seeyng^t 32
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore ²delaye ye so moche
to put thys deuyl to deth? I reche not though

¹ k iij, col. 2.

² k iij, back.

he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye
of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a
good cristen man, & were baptysed and byleued in
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his
12 fader: "O moost dyer fader, I praye you to be better
aduysed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as
themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold &
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make
frendes."

Fierabras re-
proves her for her
unfilial conduct,
(5823)

and implores his
father to consent
to be a Christian.
(5823)

20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,
spoke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!
I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere agoon,
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is
24 arysens fro deth ¹to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys
28 playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon
themperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vn-
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys
32 heed, & Fyerabras pardoned hym gladly. Thenne
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he shold
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of
bourgoyne. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

Balan calls him a
fool, and declares
he will never do
so. (5843)

Charles asks who
will kill the
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,
and smites off his
head. (5865)

Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty,

and especially
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is
not changed.
Guy and Floripas
are married,

and crowned king
and queen of
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ “Syr, ye remembre wel what
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to
hyr.” Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was
despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptysed. She
beyng there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whyche was 8
ryght whyte and wel formed, so playsaunt and amerouse
for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man
merueylled. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two
sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12
stondyng in ¹the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;
hyr heyr shynnyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16
accumyled that it henge bynethe hyr ²knees; hyr mouth
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a
smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and
so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and
enflamed theyr entencion wyth concupyscence, and
specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24
auncyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned
for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptysed. And
charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,
wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them,
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32
And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras
wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all ³that

¹ k iiij.

² orig. kuees.

³ k iiij, col. 2.

leuer guye shold haue, he shold holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the weddyng' and espousaylles endured viij dayes. And charles abode there two

The wedding festivities last 8 days. (5913)

4 monethes and two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to themperour, and how they were proued' by myracle, & of the retournyng' of Charles, and of the ende of thys book.

[capitulo

xvj]

12 Charles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and in the contreye adiacent, that he that wold not be baptysed was put to deth, and so serched oueral.

And on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and sayd to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue

16 crowned you and maad you quene of thys contree. I haue accomplysshed your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,

Charles reminds Floripas of all he had done for her, (5923)

your husbond, And more ouer ye be baptysed, and in waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest

20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And he and fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And I shal leue with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the

ende that the paynymys be alwaye in drede; but ye

24 haue not yet shewed ²to me nothyng' of the holy relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd: "Syr

and calls on her to produce the sacred relics. (5931)

emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and thenne she brouzt forth the chest in whyche they were

28 honestly.

Floripas brings him the coffer containing them, (5936)

¶ Themperour kneled down on bothe his knees, and enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop

to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd. And fyrst

32 he shewed the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu Cryst was crowned wyth, whyche was of pryckyng

which Tnrpin reverently opens.

¹ orig. ener.

² k iiij, back.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5950)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5954)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayleth the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplacyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hye in the ayer, & wythdrewe hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the ¹peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes² & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode³ in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng: ¶ "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynges. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pyeces, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawn he took hede of hys gloue, &

¹ orig. peyle. ² orig. haudes. ³ k iij, back, col. 2.

retorned and sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale pyeces of the sayd relyques were,—abode hangyng¹ in thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne

remains miraculously suspended in the air

4¹ was this myracle seen euydently, and al thys was shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon
8 in byleuyng² & adouryng the sayd relyques. And these thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnderstonden in the best partye & sygnifycacion that I can or wold say, And I haue not sayd ony thyng but that
12 I haue been wel enformed by writyng¹. And as for the book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles, and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I haue tofore spoken al alonge.

for an hour. (6002)

16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche conteyneth two partyes, by the chapytres folowyng declared¹.

The contents of the third book.

¶ The fyrst partye of the thyrd book conteyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the warres made in spayne, and of two meruayllous geauntes.

24 ¶ How Saynt Iames apppyered to Charles, and how, by the moyen and the conduyte of the sterres, he went in to galyce, & what cytees he subdued : ca. j

28² Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken moche payne for to mayntene the name of god for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he had goten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

Charles wishes after all his labours to rest from fighting,

¹ k v.

² k v, col 2.

and to devote
himself to
religion;

but in a vision he
sees a line of
stars,

pointing to
Galicia.

A man appears to
him,

who declares he
is St. James,
the Apostle of
Galicia,

and reproaches
him for not
recovering that
country from the
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a
contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng^r his maker of þ^e grace
that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng^r hys enemyes.
Neuertheles on a nyght it happed^r hym that he byhelde 4
the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng^r
alle the nyght one waye and^r one path. And they
began at the see of fryselond^r in passyng^r bytwene
alemayn and^r ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and^r guyanne, 8
And passed ryght the sayd^r sterres by gascoyne, bascle,
Nauarre, and^r espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys
puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd^r and^r maad^r
crysten. And after, the ende of the sayd^r sterres thus 12
goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of
the holy appostle was, he nat knowyng^r the propre
place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the
sayd^r sterres, and^r thought moche contynuelly what thys 16
myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In
one nyght emonge the other that¹ charles thought on
thys waye, a man appyered^r to hym in vysyon, whyche
was so fayr, so playsaunte, and^r so shynyng^r, that it was 20
meruaylle; whyche sayd^r to hym: "what doost thou,
my fayre sone?" Charles, beyng^r al rauysshed^r, answerd^r:
"who arte thou, fayr syr?" That other answerd^r: "I
am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24
Zebedee, and^r propre broder of saynt Iohan the euan-
gelyst, & am he whom god^d chaas to preche the crysten
fayth and^r hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and^r of
galylee, by hys holy grace, and^r he whom herode dyd^r 28
put to deth by swerde; and^r my body abydeþ emonge
the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated^r it vylaynsly, &
lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I mer-
ueylle that thou hast not conquerd^r my londe, Seen and^r 32
consyderyd^r that thou hast conquerd so many regyones,
townes, & cytees in the world^d. wherefore I do the to
wete, that lyke as god^d hath chosen the, and made the

superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges
 & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that
 lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the
 mescreaunt sarasyns and enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And
 to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what ¹place
 thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the
 8 sterres by dyuyne magnyfycence. And for to obteyne
 the more Ioye & gretter glorie in heuen, by haultayn
 and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-
 myes, & in that same place thou sha[^l]t make and doo
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come
 the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &
 pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue
 vysited my sepulture, and haue made the waye sure, and
 16 ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and conserue the
 place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys
 maner appyered thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour
 Charles. After these vysyons and certyfycacyons of
 20 god, he called and assembled hys subgettes, whome he
 dyd do put a grete multytude in good poynte, & after
 took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the
 sterres had shewed the waye aforesayd, and came fyrst
 24 in to spayne: and the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym
 was panpylonne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl
 and towres, & garnysshed wyth sarasyns. and he
 abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to
 do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he
 went, ²that in the vertu of hys name he myght take
 that cyte, and sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god,
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree
 for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysse
 and mayntene thyn holy name. And also thou holy
 saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

as God wishes
him.

He promises
him success,
and bids him raise
a church to his
name,

as a perpetual
memorial.

After this vision
had appeared
thrice,

Charles starts
with his army for
Galicia.

He besieges Pam-
peluna in vain for
three months,

and then invokes
in prayer the help
of St. James.

¹ k v, back, col. 2.

² k vj.

Iourneye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleuynge¹ peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnynge may the better determyne the ende of myn entencyon." 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had^d fynysshed^d his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces; and^d after, charles and his hoost entred^d in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold^d be baptysed^d & byleue in god^d wythoute fyctyon, was saued^d and put a-parte, and who sayd^d the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned^d in to Ruynes at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contradycyon came and^d yelded^d them to the mercy of kyng^d charles. And^d thus many were baptysed^d, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned^d, and al the contreye reducd^d to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelite of the emperour charles, and^d brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wythoute any other gaynsayeng in sygne of seynourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles, & how somme were by hym destroyed'.
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

A fter that charles had^d the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd^d hys deuocyon, and^d made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in p^e lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no farther, and^d there fixed^d 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called^d petronium; & thanked^d god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunce he was comen so ferre wythoute any contradycyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no farther. And^d in that londe who that wold^d byleue

at a place called Petronium.

¹ k vj, col. 2.

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who
 that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after
 Charles wente from one see to that other, and thezne he
 4 gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete
 townes & stronge, emonge whome ¹was onsea, in which
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that
 had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was
 dysciple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllyng.

He captures 13
 cities in Galicia,
 and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,
 the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe
 of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not
 wynne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he
 layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not
 wynne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vycctorious, seen that he
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte
 onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that ²the walles fyl
 down to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche
 wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therein after, and after it

the whole of
 which was subject
 to him.

He besieges
 Lucerne for 4
 months,

but in vain,

and then prays to
 St. James,

when the walls
 fall down, and
 the city is taken,

and turned into a
 lake containing
 black fishes.

32 sanke, and therein was an abysme or swolowe of water,
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij
 that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

¹ k vj, back.

² k vj, back, col. 2.

therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursd, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperce, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij 8

WHan Charles had doon in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thydolles and other symylacres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12 Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was¹ the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomete in the tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahomet² in 16 thonour of hym: and by arte magyke and dyabolyke he closed therein a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuynge coude by 20 strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24 the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28 vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and grauen subtylly of grete and ryche facyon, the whyche was enhaunced vpryght, not without grete 32 crafte & connyng. toward the erth it was meruayllously

Charles destroys
all the idols;

but at Salancadys
was a great idol,

kept so by devils
that none could
destroy it,

and which no
Christian dare
approach.

It stood on a
large stone,
richly carved,

¹ orig. and was.

² k vij.

- grete, & alway vpward it was lasse; and that stone was
 so hye as a crowe myght flee: vpon whyche stone was
 thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorye, after thas-
 4 semblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, &
 had hys face turned to the south, & helde in his ryght
 honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefyd¹ for
 trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne,
 8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and
 brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle
 the keye, whych shold be a sygne pat the kyng of
 fraunce shold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme
 12 that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to
 brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye
 falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns
 sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,
 16 and precyous stoones, in therth, by cause the crysten
 men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in
 to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of
 the kyng.

and was of fine
ivory,

and held in his
hand a key,

which was to fall
when a king
should come to
subdue the
country.

On the approach
of Charles the
key falls.

- 20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce,
 and of dyuers other whyche Kyng' Charles
 founded: capitulo iiij

- 24 C Charles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte
 Of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many
 kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of
 cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

Charles, having
an immense
quantity of gold
and silver,

- ¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd
 28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne² aforesayd.
 Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd
 do compose and make a chirche of Saynt Iames, in the
 place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and
 32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,
 and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and

builds a church
to St. James,

and ordains a
bishop

¹ k vij, col. 2.

² k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church he builds at Acon to Our Lady,

and four to St. James,

besides abbeyes and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessour; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes suffycient, and gaf to them synguler seynourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of precyous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfycal. also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And of 8 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyngt.

¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chirche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chirche of saynt 16 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounste of martres. & aboute the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo v

After Charles's return to France,

Aigolant, an African giant, reconquers Spain, and puts the Christians to death.

AFTER that charles was returned in to Fraunce, a kyng¹ sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, bycause it was shewed to hym so pyetously.

¹ k vij, back, col. 2.

wherefore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour
 4 of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland. & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynge where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, ¹and
 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys
 12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seyng thenten-
 cyon of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not
 16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by
 20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not leue herby, but sente two
 24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ^e sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrð day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences,
 28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles ²was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and
 32 specyally charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

¹ k viij.

² k viij, col. 2.

By a miracle it is shown which of the French soldiers should be killed in the battle.

From their spears springs up a great wood.

Milo and 50 knights are slain,

but the Saracens are put to flight.

Reinforcements come to Charles,

whereupon Aigolant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to France,

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there
 theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of
 saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after
 was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a 4
 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in
 the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed
 grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and
 be gloryfyed marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8
 speres on þ^e morn were founden al grene, floressed
 and leued, whyche was a precedent sygne that they
 whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.
 ¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12
 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-
 rotated, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,
 whyche stondest there yet. It was grete meruayle of
 the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16
 deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche
 was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt¹ crysten men
 were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne duc
 Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20
 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a
 fote he maad grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse,
 and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng^t the
 euenyng^t, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of 24
 surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next
 day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse
 of ytalye, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng^t
 men & chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe 28
 of theyr comyng^t, he fled and wythdrewe hym ouer the
 see toward hys contree. but they myȝt not for hast bere
 with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was
 enryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng^t he came
 wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and theȝne, duryng
 seuen yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of

¹ k viij, back.

the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was
 4 not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd ¹ reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy
 8 marters in establysshynge theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone
 12 derked thre tymes, and the sonne ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupes himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

16 ¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and how Charles in habyte dys-symyled spake to hym, and of other
 20 maters: capitulo vj

AS I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his
 24 purpoos, but maad grete dylygence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and percyens; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of
 28 arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of ² maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

¹ k viij, back, col. 2.

² l j.

Aigolant invites
Charles to visit
him unattended.

Charles sets out
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,
except 40,
near the city.

He himself, in
disguise and with
only one attend-
ant, enters the
city,

and presents him-
self as a messenger
from Charles,

to say he had
come with only
40 attendants.

Aigolant replies
that he will go
and meet the
French king.

trustyly, with a fewe peple, promysyng¹ to hym for to
gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-
cious stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this
paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4
his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he
wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe
hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng
charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8
peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour
and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle
nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore
named were, he left his peple secretly, & came vnto a 12
mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanyed wyth xl
knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte,
by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were de-
parted, soo that he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16
vpon thys montayne he left hys peple secretly, and
took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a
messenger, and took one knyght onely with hym,
whyche bare his spere & swerde and bocler vnder hys 20
mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was
brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was
tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng
hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24
he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanyed
wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to
doo. Now thenne come to hym wyth xl knyghtes,
withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysse and holde 28
that thou hast promysed." Aigolant sayd to hem that
they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say
to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and
he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32
had knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne,
for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer
it whan he shold come ageyn, & sawe al the kynges.

¹ l j, col. 2.

forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorned to his
 peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, & after
 came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,
 4 accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them
 withoute taryeng. But charles took hede whan he cam
 that there were many moo paynymys than crysten men,
 and ¹wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-
 8 parted, and retorned in to fraunce wythout hauyng
 other delyberacyon.

Charles, having
 spied out all the
 city, departs.

Aigolant, with
 7000 men, follows
 him,

but Charles
 escapes.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche
 peple, retorned in to the place aforesayd &
 12 toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :
 [capitulo] vij

After that charles was retorned in to fraunce he
 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte
 16 of agenne, & assyged it there by grete facyon,
 the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &
 many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis
 & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to greue it. Whan
 20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his compagne sawe þat
 they myght not endure, they maad hooles & caues vnder
 therth for tescape oute secretly : in that maner they came
 out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by
 24 the cyte, named goronna, and so they saued them self.
 The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-
 ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete
 tryumphe & puyssaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to
 28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,
 seyng that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant
²was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it
 he came thyder & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer
 32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so
 doo, but by a moyen that was, that they shold make a

Charles assembles
 a large army,

and lays siege to
 Agenne, which he
 surrounds.

Aigolant and his
 lords escape by
 mines.

Charles enters the
 city,

and after besieges
 the city to which
 Aigolant had fled.

¹ 1 j, back.

² 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes
a general battle.

Those of the
Christians who
were destined to
die are again
pointed out by a
miracle.

The Saracens are
utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wyne the bataylle shold be
lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the
bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel
thalabout & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4
crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, espe-
cially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the
crowne of glorye as marters of god. and on the morne
they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8
& ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche
loyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for
þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god.
After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12
bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in
thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo
than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; & that tyme
the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16
and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the
kyng of Agabye [&] the kyng of bugye, merueyllous
myghty sarasyns.

¹¶ Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20
made whan he was retorned' in to fraunce,
& what barons he had' in hys companye, &
of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij

After his defeat
Aigolant flies to
Pampeluna.

Charles returns
to France for
reinforcements.

THe bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24
came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles
that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle
more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre
he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28
peple, and made an open maundement thorough out al
Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condycyon
and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr
successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32
be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe, that wold goo with

hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysonners
 that were in fraunce, he delyuerd them al out of
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonned
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good
 largely, & them that were euyll cladd, he clothed them
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he
 peased them & accorded; Alle them þat were dys-
 heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al
 to them; Alle þe peple¹ that myght bere armes he
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-
 nacyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannysshed for the
 loue of god, he was constraynede to pardonne them, &
 16 made pees with euery man. and thenne he was four-
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng,
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innume-
 rable. And for to gyue courage to the prynces of Charles,
 20 Turpyn sayd in this maner: "I, Turpyn, archebyssshop
 of Raynes by the grace of god, shal gyue good courage
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns,
 with myn owne handes." ¶ Wyth Charles was
 24 Roulland of Cenonye, neuewe of Charles, sone of hys
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure
 thousand fyghtyng men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of
 duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng men: Aristagius,
 28 kyng of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng men;
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng,
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-
 gustus Cezar had ordeyned, wyth the byturyciens, the
 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes,
 cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam
 with iij M horsmen ² good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng
 of bordeloy, with iiij M men; Salamon, fellow of estok;

He frees all
prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the
disinherited,

and raises the
esquires to
knighthood,
on condition of
joining his army.

Turpin assures
him of success.

With Charles are
Roland, Oliver,
and Aristagius
with 14,000 men.

Besides were men
from Guienne,

¹ 1 ij, col. 2.

² 1 ij, back.

Burgundy,
Lorraine, and
other provinces.

bawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bauiere, wyth x M fyghtyngⁱ men; Hoel of Nautes, & Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars; Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4 lorayne, & many other; and Charles had^e of his owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excercyte of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt kyngⁱ of Fraunce, was so grete and^e so ample that it helde 8 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye & more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made for the grete multytude of the freyssshemen, it was herde two myle ferre and more. 12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant, and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore aygolant was not baptysed^e: capitulo ix

Aigolant, fright-
ened at the num-
bers of the French,

proposes a con-
ference.

It is agreed to
leave the question
of religion to a
trial of arms
between equal
numbers.

THe whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16 lerned^e at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and spake it whan he wold^e. Aygolant, thys geaunt and^e grete Lord^e, coude not abstayne hym, and cam nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20 hym vnto Pampylone, and^e tryews was ¹maad^e bytwene them. For Aygolant consydered^e the multytude of hys people and^e the puyssaunces of their persones. For by cours of nature hym semed^e he shold^e surmounte the 24 crysten peple, but he thought that the god^e of crysten people was more certayn and^e trewe than the god of the paynymys; but er he wold declyne fro the worshypping of hys goddes, he had^e desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28 of paynymys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And he was contente to make a pacte and^e couenaunt wyth charles, that he that shold^e obteyne the vycctorye vpon others peple, that his god were holden and^e worshypped^e, 32 And that the god^e of hym that shold^e lose the bataylle

¹ 1 ij, back, col. 2.

shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.
 And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten
 knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynyms. And anone
 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty
 sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst
 fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-
 quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but
 8 they were not slayne, but fledde. Aygolant thougt he
 wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and
 anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. ^{1¶} Thys
 geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys
 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a
 thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyth-
 oute makynge grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone
 slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by
 16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of
 crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn
 than the lawe of the paynyms and sarasyns, and thus he
 was enclyned to the crysten fayth, & dysposed hym to
 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and
 here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &
 come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good
 hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was
 24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and
 hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were
 vaylเลอร์ous and soo grete as it was in armes and in
 bataylles. And also he came pryncypally for to be
 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete
 magnyfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple
 and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and
 grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;
 32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and
 the cause of theyr estate, and after ²that he sawe
 in a parte of y^e halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij
 poure persones, which dynd & ete as oþer dyd. for

20 Christians
engage as many
Saracens, and
slay them;

and after 40 over-
come 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000
Christians slay
1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is con-
vinced, and agrees
to receive baptism.

He asks to see
Charles at meat
with his lords.

He sees 13 poor
men, sitting on
the ground at
dinner,

¹ 1 iij.

² 1 iij, col. 2.

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he
 had xij poure men in the worschypp of our lord and
 of his xij appostles, & he toke hede how these poure
 men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4
 and asks who and habyte, & dynded al soroufully, & he demaunded what
 what they are. people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be
 Charles tells him goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst,
 they are main- whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij appostles 8
 tained in memory of our Lord and
 His Apostles. that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon cor-
 porel." Aygolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl
 hys lord y^t receyueth his messagers in thys manere. I
 see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12
 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke,
 & the seruauztes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed
 ayenst y^e colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he
 Aigolant reproves dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueth his mes- 16
 Charles for treat- sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that
 ing his lords so the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good &
 much better than the servants of God, holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of
 no valewe." & herof aygolant was all moeued & troubled 20
 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro hys
 purpose, toke leue of the ¹kyng & retourned to hys
 and refuses to be people, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to
 baptised. charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y^e morne more 24
 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aygolant and of his peple, &
 how moche crysten peple were slayn by
 concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28
 founden dede by myracle: [ca.] x

Charles is
 enraged,

WHan charles sawe Aygolant come for to baptys
 hym he was moche Ioyous, but whan he re-
 turned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32
 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

¹ 1 iij, back.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and
 after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was
 none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour re-
 4 membred wel that the peple of god ought to be re-
 ceuyed honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor
 the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd
 them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them
 8 mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that
 he faylled not, but the pour peple were receuyed with
 honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day
 folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to
 12 fyght ¹ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and
 there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns,
 that the crysten men were empessed and lette by the
 blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many
 16 dayes water and blood. wherefore ² Aygolant, seyng
 the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothyng
 to deye, aduauced ³ so hym self that he was slayn and
 put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the
 20 cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that
 they fonde therein.

and has all these
 poor men clothed
 and honourably
 treated.

A great battle
 takes place,

In which the
 Saracens are
 defeated,

and Aigolant
 himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of cordube
 saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After
 24 thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold
 and syluer of the sarasyns that were deed retourned, And
 whan they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer,
 and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng
 28 of Cordube took hede ther of, And wyth al their meyne
 came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth
 moo than a thousand.

The kings of
 Seville and of
 Cordova fall on
 the Christians
 laden with booty,
 and kill more
 than 1000,

¶ Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupy-
 32 scence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute
 vycorye, and to god dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne
 tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

from which we
 may see the
 danger of covet-
 ousness.

¹ 1 iij, back, col. 2.

² *orig.* wherforr.

³ *orig.* and aduauced.

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and
prays to God to
point out which
of the Christians
are destined to
die.

This being shown
to him,

he locks them up
in his chapel,

and goes to battle
without them.

On his return he
finds them all
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce ¹of Nauarre
named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue
batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt,
& so trustyngⁱ in god, whan he faught for the crysten 4
fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of
bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles
put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that
it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold deye in 8
that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery
man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord
Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle
rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoys. 12
whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had com-
passyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of
theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare
thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16
after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold
not take deth that day; and thenne wyth al his other
hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it
was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed 20
and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour
came in to hys oratorye victoryous vpon hys enemyes,
and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede &
expyred, & thenne knewe ²he wel that alle they that 24
were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to
be receyued in to heuen with glorie & crowne of marter-
dom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge
theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put 28
hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is
not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce 32
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught
wyth hym: capitulo xj.

¹ 1 iiij.

² 1 iiij, col. 2.

After that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many
 kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges
 cam to the admyral of babyloune, the which had a
 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of
 golias, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M
 turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst
 charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubte^d
 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte
 of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom
 & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to
 fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,
 12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne
 other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl ¹myghty
 men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges
 of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his
 16 wathe nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knowen this
 geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn-
 guler persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer
 had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogier the
 20 danoy. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the
 felde, without makyng of ony semblaunte of warre, he
 came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande &
 put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym ony
 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put
 hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym,
 than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght
 of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face
 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes &
 thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was
 thre palmes longe. After that Ogier was borne thus
 awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus
 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lightly as the other.
 Charles was abasshed and sent tweyne other, that is to
 wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt
 took that one wyth² the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of
 Babylon sends
 Ferragus, a mar-
 vellous giant,

to fight against
 Charles.

He challenges any
 French knight.

Charles sends
 Ogier to meet him,

but Ferragus
 takes him under
 his arm and

carries him off,
 as a wolf would a
 lamb.

Charles then
 sends Raynold,
 and he also is
 carried off.

Then Constayn
 and Hoel are sent,

¹ l iij, back.

² orig. wyght.

but Ferragus
carries them off,
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave
to fight the giant.

Charles reluct-
antly gives his
consent.

Ferragus lifts
Roland up with
one hand, and
lays him on his
horse before him.

Roland, by an
effort, overthrows
the giant.

Roland kills the
Saracen's horse,

and wounds
Ferragus in the
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them ¹bothe tweyne in-to pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see. yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they were bothe borne away wythoute any wythstandyng or 4 contradycyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man, he was al abashed, & durst nomore sende any persone. For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche was prynce of al thexcersyte of Charles, was euyl con- 8 tente of thys that the geaunt was vycoryous, & came to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last, by force, he was constrayned to gyue to hym lycence, 12 & Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus; but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght hande lyke the other, and the geaunt layed hym tofore hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was 16 taken & borne away soo vylaynsly he took a grete² courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20 ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche habyle and courageous, drewe ³hys swerde durandal 24 and came ayenst the geaunt, and gaf soo grete a stroke on the Paynyms hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus, beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28 hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyton Rolland, Roulland auauenced hym self and smote the geant vpon 32 the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

¹ l iij, back, col. 2.

² orig. gtete.

³ l v.

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in
 suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe
 two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght
 4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the
 houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wery, and
 took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,
 and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute
 8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys
 lodgys.

Roland's horse is
 killed.

Being both weary,
 they leave off
 fighting for the
 day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus
 foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by
 12 what ¹moyen Feragus was slayn by Roulland': capitulo
 xij

THe next day folowyng^r erly, Rolland and Feragus
 came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt
 16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng
 worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or
 clubbe, ryȝt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;
 but he myght nowher hurte hym. & also he smote
 20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo
 wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this
 maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-
 day. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of
 24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland
 was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that
 whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete
 stone and layed it vnder hys heed, to the ende that he
 28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And
 after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,
 he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by
 hym and sayd to hym: "I meruaylle moche of thy
 32 feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou
 mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,

Next morning the
 duel is renewed.

Roland takes with
 him only a great
 staff.

At noon Ferragus
 is tired, and
 wishes to sleep a
 while.

Roland makes
 him comfortable.

He asks him how
 it is he cannot
 by any means
 wound him.

Ferragus tells him that he is vulnerable only in the navel.

The Saracen inquires about the doctrines of Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all that are baptised shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes to settle the question of religion by arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in¹ ²noo wyse." The
geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : "I may
not be slayn, but by the navel." whan Rolland herde
that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4
After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,
and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym :
"I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the
ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8
what lawe he helde. Rolland answered : "I holde the
cristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :
"what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it?" to
whyche Roulland answered : "It is trouthe y^t after god 12
almyghty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader
adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaunde-
ments ; the world was Juge here in erthe wythoute
hauyng of beatytude, ne of felicyte : and long tyme 16
after the sone of god, the second persone of the Trynyte,
remembred hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche
is gyuen to euery persone, and descended fro heuen and
took our humanyte and suffred greuous passyon of 20
paynes. And he beyng in this world hath gyuen en-
seygnements and stablyssed constytucyons for to saue
vs, & pryncypally who byleueth in hym & in hys
werkes parfyghtly, and that he be baptysed, After this 24
³mortal lyf he shal be saued in heuen : and, loo ! this
is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."
And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-
tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answered to 28
hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this
manere : "thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the
fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym,
& holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that 32
shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be
holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of
hym that is vycoryous late it be holden for good &

¹ orig. im.

² 1 v, back.

³ 1 v, back, col. 2.

- trewe, and that it be enterly kepte and obserued."
- The valyaunt Rolland was contente ryght wel, & accepted hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to
 4 fyght. Anone Rolland came to hym, and Feragus lyft
 vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland moche malycyously,
 and Roulland sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and
 for to voyde it he launced hys staffe ayenst the swerde,
 8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and
 there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland and had hym
 down vnder hym. Rolland, consyderynge that he myght
 not flee ne escape, he called in hys hert deuoutely the
 12 name of Ihesus, and yelded hym to god & ¹to the
 vyrgyn marye: & he anon re pryse d suche strengthe &
 myzt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtyly repugned the
 geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte
 16 vnder hym, and thenne moche quyckly and subtylly he
 sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the
 nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that
 he myzt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte
 20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed so hye & lowde,
 that alle they that were in that place were aferd &
 abasshed of hys crye, & he sayd: "O Mahomet, my
 god, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour
 24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger."
 with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and
 bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they
 coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland was
 28 comen alle hool and sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth
 the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns
 that bare Feragus, and entred in to the cyte, and so
 moche dyd that the geaunt was dede, and after came
 32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and took out Ogier,
 Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

Roland agrees.

The fight is renewed.

Roland's staff is cut in two,

but by a great effort he gets the giant under him

and stabs him in the navel.

The Saracens bear Ferragus away.

Charles assaults the town,

takes it and

releases his knights.

¶ How Charles went to Cor¹dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon :

ca.

xiiij 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches against them.

The Saracens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

A Fter thys aforesayd, the kyng¹ Corbude and the kyng¹ of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad² a moche subtil and wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had vysieres counter- 12 feyted³ all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylles, for to deceyue the crysten men ; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disreng & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed³ a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couer² theyr eyen wyth clothes, And stopped² theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold² not see ne ²here the sarasyns dysguysed² & counterfayted². And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared² not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday ; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed², For they had a carte myghty and grete for to resyste and make grete empresshement to theyr enemyes. And this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon³ stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

¹ l vj, col. 2.

² l vi, back.

³ orig. thre-vpon.

- aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to
 4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y^e paynymys were slayn and dede.
 & on the morne after the towne was delyuerd vnto
 8 Charles by the lord of the toun,¹ whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptyse, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne
 12 charles ordeyned in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was ²alwaye vycoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also
 16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryncypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

- ¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was
 20 halowed by tharchebyssshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and of other pryncypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

- 24 **C**harles the noble emperour, after that he had put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,
 28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntryewe and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and
 32 bannysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeyned bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

¹ orig. tonn.

² 1 vj, back, col. 2.

and ordains that
all the bishops of
Spain shall be
subject to the
bishop of St.
James.

Turpin conse-
crates the Church
of St. James.

Charles appoints
the payment of
tithes to the
church,

and orders that
all consecrations
and coronations
shall take place
there.

The body of St.
John is deposited
on the right side,
and that of St.
James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytucyons,¹
synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and
vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt ²Iames he
made constytucyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, 4
prynces, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be
subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold
owe to that chyrche fydeyte, wyth al the peple of the
londe of galyce. And accordyng to the same the arche- 8
bisshop Turpyn wryteth in thys manere: "And I,
Turpyn, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the same place,
where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I,
accompayne^d wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good 12
lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the
moneth of Iuyl, haue halowed, dedycated, blessyd, and
consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the aulter of
the same. And after thenne the kynge Charles gaf al 16
the londe of spayne & of galyce to that chyrche, And
after ordeyned y^t euery hous of spayn and galyce shold
gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the
money corraunt for annuel³ trybute. And by the 20
moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruy-
tude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he estab-
lysshed that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be
sayd apostolyque for thexaltacion of the place. And 24
more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dygnyte
of alle spayne & of galyce, and semblably the coro-
nacions of kynges of al the contre, shold be crowned &
sacred by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse 28
as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of
ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuan-
gelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. &
thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And 32
Saynt Iames, hys brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne
was accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

¹ orig. constytucyous.

² 1 vij.

³ orig. amuel.

⁴ 1 vij, col. 2.

hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu
 Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte,
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,
 4 whyche was thenne accomplysshed and termyned. &
 therefore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches
 pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephe-
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of
 Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf ony demaunded the
 cause of these thre places and syeges pryncipal of cris-
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apparence. These thre
 places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr
 lyues, and put lawaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardon
 16 and forgyuenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Johan, & saynt James, haue pre-
 ceded all the other in the companye of Jhesu Cryst
 whan he was in thys world, & haue ben called to hys
 20 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue
 conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr
 bodyes resten, oughten to be honoured and to be
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preched at Rome, and there
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome
 is enhaunced & exalted aboue al other chyrches. &
 28 after saynt Johan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel '**In
 principio erat verbum & cetera,**' And by his holy
 prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had
 grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myracles, as for hys
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal world."

Thus the three
 chief churches in
 the world are
 those of Rome,
 Ephesus,
 and St. James,

because St. Peter,
 St. John, and St.
 James were the
 chief of the
 Apostles.

The church of
 Rome is the head,
 because there St.
 Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next,
 because there St.
 John wrote his
 Gospel,

and the church of
 St. James is third.

¹¶ The second' parte of the thyrd book conteyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

¶ How the treason was comprysed' by Ganelon, and of the deth of crysten men, & how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour: capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and Bellegandus, kings of Saragossa, pretend to be ready to submit to Charles.

IN this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were sente by thadmyral of babylonne in to spayne, the 12 whyche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synge of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaundement holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepcyon. Themperour, seying that they were not crysten, and for 16 to gete seynourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptyse them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20 went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, ²and other 24 rychesses, & iiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn, for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28 in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer, sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he shold brynge in to theyr hondes the compagne of 32 charles yf he myght doo it.

Charles sends Ganelon, requiring them to be baptized and pay tribute.

The Saracens send presents to Charles, and induce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise to betray the French army.

¹ 1 vij, back, col. 2.

² 1 viij.

Thenne ganellon was surprysed wyth thys fals
 auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte
 that is in persones, for to haue gold¹ or syluer & other
 4 rychesses, & made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the
 sarasyns for to betraye hys lord², hys neyghbours, &
 crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them
 of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon,
 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue¹ cause
 coloured ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains
 to betray Charles
 and his fellow-
 countrymen.

¶ O wycked Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse,
 & thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche
 12 & a grete lord², and for money thou hast betrayed¹ thy
 mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to
 goo to y^e sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other,
 and for the fydelyte that was thought in ²the, thou
 16 hast consented to trayson, and allone hast commysed¹
 Infydelyte. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of
 a fals wylle plunged in thabysme of auaryce? Thy
 naturel souerayn lord², Roullan², Olyuer, & the other,
 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked
 hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to
 destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou
 louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre?
 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capy-
 tain ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that
 thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende shew-
 eth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and
 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the
 is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god dys-
 obeysaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put
 to vtire ruine and destructyon. Thus in thys manere
 32 ganellon brought gold¹ and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and
 other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed. Whan
 charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in
 good¹ entent and equyte and wythout barat. The grete

The author's re-
 proach to Ganelon
 for his treachery,

for which he had
 no reason but
 avarice,

which had ruined
 so many.

Ganelon presents
 the presents to
 Charles,

who falls into the
 trap.

¹ orig. hane.

² 1 viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold
and silver himself,
and gives the
wine to his
knights.

Charles, per-
suaded by Gane-
lon, sends his
homewards.

Marsurius and
Bellegandus lay
an ambush in
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the
French.

The fight lasts all
day.

At night the
French soldiers
get drunk on the
wine.

Then 30,000 Sara-
cens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles
took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people
took the hethen wymmen. Themperour ¹ gaf consente
to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, ⁴
and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys
hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd
hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold
become crysten and be baptysed, and swere fydelite to ⁸
the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and
he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland
& Olyuer & the moost special of hys subgettes wyth a
thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounceyuale. ¹²
Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after
the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns
were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh
men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & ¹⁶
deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they
put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx
thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles
were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were ²⁰
assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre
in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe
them; For fro the mornynge vnto the houre of tyerce
they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore ²⁴
the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to
reste theym. Neuertheles, they ² dronken wel of the
good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And
after many of them that were dronke went & laye by ²⁸
the wymmen sarasynnoys, & also wyth other that they
had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wylle of god
was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their
martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr ³²
saucion & purgyng of their synne. For anone after
the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the
second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

¹ 1 viij, back.

² 1 viij, back, col. 2.

that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, and slay all except
bauldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede Roland, Thierry,
with speres: somme slayn, somme rosteð, and other and Baldwin.

4 quartreð, and submyseð to many tormentes. And whan
thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles,
and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng
of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche
8 supposeð that they alle had be destroyed and put to
deth. ¶ Of the languysshie that was comynge to Charles,
he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how

12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-
tally after that al his peple were slayn :
capitulo : ij

16 ¹ **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche
sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery,
retorned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn

moche fyers & blacke as boyled pytche, and anone he
took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a
20 tree straytely, wythoute doying to hym ony more harme,
and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the
hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were
fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynims. Wherefore

24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche
lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym an hundred
cristen men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo.

And whan they were come to hym he retorned to the
28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland
helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,
yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus,
& yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn

32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for
to saue his lyf ; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures
a Saracen,
whom he ties to
a tree,

and afterwards
compels to point
out to him Mar-
surius.

The Saracen
points out Mar-
surius,

whom Roland
kills.

The Saracens fly
before him.

All the French
are killed, except
three.

Bellegandus and
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynims, and shewed to
 Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a
 rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt
 Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng¹ 4
 verly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus,
 as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he
 encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony
 of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8
 durandal vpon the hede that he clefted hym & hys hors
 in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde &
 that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns
 were soo troubled and abashed of the myght and puy- 12
 saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, &
 thenne abode the kynge Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke.
 Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came
 to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16
 the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in
 thys recountre were dolorously slayn & put to deth,
 Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere
 fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20
 slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in
 suche wyse deteyned that wyth foure grete speres he
 was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with
 stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mor- 24
 tally. And not withstondyng these greuous hurte &
 woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out
 of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he
 myght. ²Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28
 that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people,
 retorne in to another contreye³, wyth hys peple moche
 hastely. And themperour Charles had thenne passed
 the montayne of Roncyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32
 these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

¹ m j, col. 2.

² m j, back.

³ orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many martyres & orysones made to god ful deuoutely, & of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde

4 durandal : capitulo iij

Rolland the valyaunt, and champyon of the crysten fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by cause they had noo socours; he was moche wery, Roland, although greatly exhausted by loss of blood,
 8 gretely abasshed, & moche affebled in hys persone, for he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete
 12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel comemoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye,
 16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Roncyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat down ¹ on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to
 20 say as gyuyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr & rychely made: the handle was of fyn beryle, shynynge meruallously; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so
 24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe & sawe it shyne moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd
 28 in thys maner pytously: ¶ "O swerd of valure, the fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne neuer fonde I the but good: thou art long by mesure; Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou
 32 barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauyour of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power of god. who may comprehende thy valure? Alas!

struggles nearly to Saragossa,

where he lies down.

He looks with grief on Durandal,

and weeping, bids it farewell.

¹ m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments
over his sword
Durandal.

Determined that
no Saracen shall
ever have it,

tries to break it
on a rock,

but Durandal
cleaves the rock
without harm to
itself.

Roland blows his
ivory horn so hard
that it breaks,

and the veins of
his neck burst.

Charles hears the
horn and recog-
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue good
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,
good swerde? many sarasyns haue ben slayn by
the; thynfydels and myscreauntes haue ben slayn by
the; the name of god is exalted by the; by the is
made the path of ¹sauement. O, how many tymes
haue I by the auenged thyniurye made to god! O, 8
how many men haue I smyton and cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort and my Joye, whyche neuer hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf any persone 12
of noo value shold haue the & I knewe it, I shold deye
for sorowe." After that Rolland had wepte ynough, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded² in hym self to breke it, 16
and toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng ony thyng the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the facon and 20
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it
moche strongely, to the ende that yf there were any
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng, that they shold come to hym tofore
they wente ony ferther, and to fore he rendred hys
sowle. Thezne, seyng that none came, he sowned it
ageyn by soo grete force and vertu, and so Impetuously, 28
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, and the
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, and the ³synwes
of his body stratched. And that noys or voys by the
grace of god came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Rolland had blownen it, and
wold haue returned ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

¹ m ij.

² orig. cenclosed.

³ m ij, col. 2.

- whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourneð hym, in sayeng¹ that Rolland² had blowen his horne for somme wylde beest that he chaced³ for his playsyr; For ofte
- 4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and that he shold⁴ not doubte of nothyng. ¶ And thus he dyð the kynge to vnderstonde that he byleued⁵ hym, and made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-
- 8 land, leyng⁶ in thys sorowe, he peased⁷ hys woundes also wel as he myght, and stratched⁸ hymself on the grasse to the fressshenes for to forgefe hys thurst, whyche was ouer grete.
- 12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym, whyche was moche heuy and sorouful for hys brother Roulland, whyche was in that necessity. And anone Roulland sayð to hym, “my frende and my brother,
- 16 I haue so grete thurst that I must nedes deye yf I haue not drynke to aswage my thurst.
- ¶ Baulduyn had grete payne in goyng⁹ here and there, and coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &
- 20 sayde he coude fynde none; and in grete anguysshe he lepte¹⁰ on Roulandes hors, and rode for to fetcche charles, For he knewe wel that rolland¹¹ was nyghe hys deth. Anone after came to hym Thyerry, duc of Ardayne,
- 24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland¹² so contynuelly that he myȝt not speke. but with grete payne Rolland confessyd hym and dysposed¹³ hym of hys consyence. neuertheles, that same day Rolland¹⁴ had receyued¹⁵ the body of our lord,
- 28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that day whyche they shold¹⁶ fyght were confessyd & comuned wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by
- 32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, & hys hondes Ioyneð, al stratched¹⁷ in the medowe, began to say thus: “Fayre lord¹⁸ god, my maker, my redemour, sone of the glorious moder of comforte, thou knowest

but Ganelon persuades him that Roland is hunting.

Roland stretches himself on the grass.

Baldwin comes to him.

Roland asks for water, but Baldwin can find none,

and rides off to fetch Charles.

Roland confesses himself,

and knowing his end is near,

commends himself to God,

¹ m ij, back.

² orig. left

myn entency[o]n, thou knowest what I haue doon for
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of
 through the merits of Christ, the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4
 and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the
 y^t tofore the thys day my faul¹tes, synnes, and ygnor-
 aunces may be pardouned to me, and take noo regarde
 to the trespaces that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed
 me, I beseche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12
 god omny²potent, wyth good wyll I departed oute of
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred
 many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16
 & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy.
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good thief on the 20
 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrche: I byleue
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.
 ¶ O good lord, I beseche the to pardoune & forgyue 28
 alle theym that thys day ben deed in ²my companye,
 & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I
 suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

and for the dan-
 gers and troubles
 he has gone
 through for the
 Christian religion.

He prays for the
 souls of his com-
 rades.

¹ m ij, back, col. 2.

² m iij.

as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comforte my spyryte,
receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes
4 on hys body, holdyng' hys flesshe, and after sayd thre
tymes, ¶ "**Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem
meum,**" and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and
sayd, "**Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,** In thys
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these
eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,
12 the glorie whyche god hath maad redy to them that
loue hym; and in sayeng, "**In manus tuas, domine,
commendo spiritum meum,**" he layed hys armes vpon
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys
16 soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juy.

Then he crosses
his hands on his
breast,

and saying, "Into
thy hands I com-
mend my spirit,"
expires.

¹¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland',
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other
20 maters: capitulo iiij

"**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebyssshop of
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceyuale, tofore
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete
28 melodye. And I wyst not what it myght be, ne wher-
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyng' a grete legyon of
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a
32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye.
whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them

"The day that
Roland died, I,
Turpin,

was celebrating
mass before
Charles,

and in the
'secret' I saw a
vision of black
spirits passing
with great noise,

and I asked them who they were, and¹ demaunded^d who they¹ were, & what they bare. One of the deuylls ansuerd^d & sayd^d, 'we bere the kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-noon he hath wel deserued^d it. And Roulland^d, your trompette, wyth 4 Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is brouzt in to Joye perdurable to heuen.' And as the masse was fynnysshed I² recounted^d to charles the vysyon whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8 soule of Roulland^d in to paradys, & the deuylls bare the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd and, while I was speaking, came Baldwin, and told these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors, of our men. cam hastily and said to charles how the crysten men 12 were dede & bytrayed, and^d how Rolland^d was hurte, and^d in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he had^d tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that euery man shold^d retorne backe, & there was a grete 16 bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater touched at the hert more than to ony other, auaunced^d hym for to goo thyder; and^d whan he came he fonde Rolland expyred^d, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20 al stratched^d. And anone Charles fyl down vpon hym, and^d began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng^d hym on his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body, & myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24 torned^d to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte of sorowe, he sayd^d in thys wyse: 'O comferte of my body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of Iustyce, spere that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28 broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng^d to Iudas³ machabeus in prowess, samblant to sampson⁴ in strengthe, & to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere newew, fayr & wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32 fendour of crysten men, walle of clergie, staffe to wydowes & of poure orphelyns, Releuer of chyrches,

¹ *orig.* w hothey.² m iij, back.³ *orig.* Indas⁴ m iij, back, col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng^t, trewe in al
 Iugement, prynce of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloued
 4 of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in And he lamented
over him as David
over Absalom,
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with¹
 the? O Roulland^t, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?
 8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty
 god^t that he conserue the; I requyre thangelis of heuen
 that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters,
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y^t they wyl receuye
 12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauyd
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brouzt the in com-
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
 20 and² sorowed^t his neuwe Roulland^t. And he made hys
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that
 nyght, & dyd^t doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes
 for to watche the body of Roulland; & after he dyd^t and, after, caused
his body to be
embalmed.
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl
 sauour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete
 28 contemplacion."

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the Next morning the
body of Oliver is
found,
 noble Olyuer stretch^t oute in maner of a crosse,

¹ orig. thith.² m iij.

fastened to four
stakes,
and flayed.

Charles vows he
will never cease
till he has avenged
the death of his
men.

By a miracle the
day continues till
he overtakes the
Saracens, and

slays 4000 of
them.

Then Charles
enquires who was
the traitor.

Thierry accuses
Ganelon.

Charles appoints
a knight to fight
for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth staues; he was al to-faissshed and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles ¹sware by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynymys were moche² ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; 12 For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeued ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litel whyle there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no ferther, retorned to rouncyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24 oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28 The kyng charles ordeyned a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fyzt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, ³anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng one ferther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, & made to sytte

¹ m iiij, col. 2.

² orig. mocbe.

³ m iiij, back.

on them iiij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two
horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the
other ij horses, & made hym to be drawen with the one
4 hors toward y^e eest, & that other toward the weste, that
other ayenst the southe, and that other toward the
north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his
quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was
8 bounden vnto.

and Charles
has Ganelon
drawn in pieces
by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles
gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &
saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that
12 he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

WHan thexecucyon was doon of Ganellon and
executed, charles & hys people cam in to the
place where the frensshe men had be slayn, &
16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to
bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme
vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for
to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye;
20 Other buryed them in the same place, & ¹somme bare
theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth
oyle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse
they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymtyoyres
24 or chircheyderdes, ryght deuoute & pryncypally halowed
emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth
vij bysshops. That one of the cymtyoyres was in erles,
and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of
28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt
Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt
Marcel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had
sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were
32 buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and
destroyed in rounceyuale. Themperour dyd do bere

The French army
attend to their
dead comrades:

some they bury,
others they em-
balm and take
with them.

Two cemeteries
are made, one at

Arles, the other
at Bordeaux,

where the French
dead are buried.

¹ m iiij, back, col. 2.

Roland is buried
at Blois, at the
Church of St.
Romain.

Oliver and others
are buried at
Bordeaux.

Charles gives all
the land for seven
miles round to the
church of St.
Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints
masses for the
dead.

At Arles are
buried Samson,
Naymes, and
others.

Constantine's
body is taken to
Rome.

rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerð
wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the
chyrche of saynt Romain, the whyche he had edefyed
and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyð rychely 4
burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence; & on hye,
ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at
hys feet he dyð do sette his horne of yuorye. Not
wythstandyng, after, the horne was taken awaye and 8
borne to Saynt Seueryn at bourdeaws. At bourdeaulx
were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, ¹kyng^t of Fryse, Ogyer,
kyng of denmark; and Crestayn, kyng of bretayne;
Garyn, duc of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12
rus, kyng of bourdeaulx; Englerius, kyng of guyan;
lambert, kyng^t of bourges, and galerus reygnaut, with
v M other, charles gaf xij C vnces of siluer of money
that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16
many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of
their soules. and al the londe seuen myle aboute he gaf
to the chyrche of saynt Romain, and maad it subgette
to that relygyon. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes 20
and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably
to the sayd chyrche for charyte & loue of Rolland, and
ordeyned it so for euer. and on the day of their pas-
syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold euery 24
yere perpetuely xxx poure men be fedde and clothed
competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that
there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that
were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28
was buryed the counte of lengres; samson, duc of bour-
goyne; Naymes, duc of bauyere; Arnold de bellandus,
and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth
ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32
uoste of ²Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other
Romayns, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules them-
perour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vnces of syluer

¹ m v.

² m v, col. 2.

and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete
somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where

4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed
to Turpyn, and' of hys buryeng' Impery-
ally: capitulo vij

8 **A**fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour charles Charles goes to Vienna,

and Turpyn, wyth the other, came and passed by
vyenne; & there Turpyn tharchebysshop, a moche
holy man, abode, for he was very and moche febled
of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne.

where he leaves
Turpin,

12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled
al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-
treye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to

and thence to
Paris.

gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vyc-
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara-
syns, paynyms, & myscreauntes. And after that he
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thapostle and saynt

20 Clement the pope had¹ doon in tyme passed, he maad
constytucyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold

He ordains that
all kings of France
shall be crowned
at St. Denis,

be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf
many rychesses to y^e chyrche, & in token that fraunce

and all bishops
should be subject
to the priest of
that church.

28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned
that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money

Also that every
person should pay
to it yearly four
pence,

32 courant yerely & perpetuelly, & al they that shold gyue
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

and any bondmen
who paid this
should be free.

He prays for the
souls of his
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-
pears to him,

and declares that
all who pay the
annual pence to
his church, shall
have forgiveness
of their sins.

And this payment
was called the
Frank of St.
Denis,

whence the coun-
try has its name
of France.

condycion, he wold^t they shold be franke & free of con-
dyeyon. And^t after anone these thynges ordeyned, he
went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche
deuoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4
wold^t praye vnto our lord^t Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^t
were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had^t
regned^t that they myght be saued^t, and^t that the payne
that they had^t taken my³t be to them the crowne of mar- 8
tyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse
he prayed^t for al them that wold^t ¹paye gladly the pens
aforesayd^t to his chyrche. As god^t wold^t, that nyght
folowyng^t saynt denys appyered^t to hym, & sayd^t to 12
hym in thys manere: "O kyng, vnderstonde me,
knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker,
& he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst
the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespaces, 16
& that wyllyngly shal paye the penyes for the edefy-
cacyon of my chyrche & augmentyng^t the seruyce of
god^t, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of
theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20
recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause
they shold wyth a good wylle pay the penyes that he
had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of
saynt denys, by cause that he was free and^t quyte of al 24
seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After
came the custome that that londe whyche was called
Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is
named^t at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28
free of al seruage anenst al peple; and^t therfore the
lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men
owen to be honoured^t & praysed^t.

¹ m v, back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:
capitulo viij

- 4 ¹ **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf
in vertuose operacyons, And whan he felte the
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he Charles retires to
Acon,
8 our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and
gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precy-
sytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of where he dies at
the age of 72,
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones leaving three sons
thenne lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles,
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had and three daugh-
ters.
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had His youngest son,
Louis, succeeds
him.
20 ordeyned for specyal loue kyng of guyan, he lefte to
hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn, Turpin, at Vienna,
archebysshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, “I Tur-
24 pyn, archbyshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the
chyrche tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the
psalm, ‘**Deus in adiutoryum**² **meum intende.**’ I sawe sees a vision of
devils,
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,
beyng constrayned to ansuere, sayd, ‘we alle goo to
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.’ Thenne I sayd

¹ m vj. ² *orig.* adintoryum. ³ m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of
our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that
ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.'" Anone after,
The devils return, or he coude fynysse hys psalme, the deuylles cam 4
retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.
" And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-
fore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?'
and tell him that St. James pro-
duced so many
good works done
by Charles, that
that same deuyl ansuerd, that 'James of galyce, frende 8
to charles, hath ben moche contraye to vs, for whan
we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally
departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so
many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12
make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-
mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght
haue noo thyng ne parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyl
¹vanysshed awaye," & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16
Charles, in the moneth of feuryere, rendred his soule
to god holyly. For after that he retorned fro spayn he
dyd but languysse & appayre in hys body toward his
deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20
to say many masses & psalters. And the vysyon that
the glorious archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfy-
cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth
chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24
paracyon of hys syege in heuen. His sepulture was
moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world,
noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myzt
not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 28
arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, com-
prysed by grete scyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,
accompanied wyth prynces Romayns, archebyssshops,
byssshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32
lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the
body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a
fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

they cannot have
his soul.

Charles is buried
with great mag-
nificence,
in a tomb over

which was set a
figure of himself,
crowned and
seated on his
throne.

a chayer of gold^d moche fayre and shynynge, and^d resembled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in
 4 fayre letters ¹of gold, & wyth the ryzt hande he helde the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed^d shold not encline to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne
 8 of gold & susteyned. And the crowne that was on hys heed^d raught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made, & the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and^d after
 12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees
were placed the
Gospels,

and in his left
hand the sceptre.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**His werke, accomplysshed to the playsyr of god^d tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the reders, and^d I haue made them thre, after that I haue comprysed in the separacyon and^d deuydyng^t of the
 20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the begynnyng^t of fraunce, and^d of the fyrst crysten kyng^t of fraunce, whyche was named Cloys by the moyen of his wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng^t Pepyn, fader of
 24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book is composed for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn the lygnage of ²kyng^t Cloys took an ende in successyon of the Royallme of Fraunce. And the sayd fyrst book
 28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourryshed, of hys corpulence, of hys etyng^t, of hys strengthe, of hys science, & other werkes of magnyfycence. The second^d book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd ayenst
 32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant, Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kyng^e; & al the fyrst parte of the second book is attrbyuted to noble olyuer,

This work contains three books, divided into chapters.

The first book tells of the beginning of France,

and of the yonth of Charles.

The second book, of the duel between Oliver and Fierabras.

The third book
treats of the con-
quest of Spain by
Charles,

of the treason of
Ganelon,

and the death of
Charles.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how
the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygre more and
put in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the
curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4
relyques recouered, and other maters of grete mer-
uaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of
saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne &
galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8
constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon
by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson
of Ganelon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was
pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12
peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably
the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and
wryton. and ¹after that ony persone wyl here or rede
of thys matere, the table made atte begynnyng shal 16
shewe it to hym lightly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or
rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

This work I have
written to be a
good example to
all,
how to rule their
liues.

AS I haue sayd at the begynnyng of thys present 20
werke, the escriptures and feates somme haue
ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memoye,
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs
ensaumple in ensyewyng and folowyng them, & they 24
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-
stondyng is more contente to reteyne parables and
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstondyng,
and also semblably thystories spekyng of our lord
Ihesu cryst, of hys myracles, & of his vertuous sub-
gettes, euery man ouzt gladly to here and retenne them. 32
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

And I have made
it at the request

- man to fore named, Maister henry bolonnyer, chanonne
of lausanne, I haue been Incyted to translate & reduyse
in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as
4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd ¹book I haue
taken & drawen oute of a book named myrroure hys-
toryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue
onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.
8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book,
I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout
fayllyng, by ordynauce of chapytres & partyes of the
sayd book, after the mater in the same conteyned.
12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken
otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good
vnderstandyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde
correxion and amendement, and of the defaultes par-
16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert
thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my
wytte & vnderstandyng, whyche is ryght lytel, can not
vttre ne wryte thys matere withoute errour. Neuer-
20 theles, who so vnderstondeth wel the lettre shal wel
compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde
nothyng but moyn for to come to saluacyon. To the
whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly
24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

of Master Bolo-
myer,
Canon of Lau-
sanne.

The first and third
book I haue trans-
lated from the
*Speculum His-
toriale*, and the
second from an
old French
romance.

I pray all who
may find a fault
in it to pardon it,

and attribute to
my want of learn-
ing, not my good-
will.

And I, William
Caxton, haue, at

the instance of
Sir W. Daubeney,

translated this
book into English

And I pray all to

¹ m vij, back.

² m vij, back, col. 2.

excuse my rude
translation, and
forgive the faults
they may find.

And this work I
finished on the
18th June, in the
year of our Lord,
1483.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and
reducyng^t, bysechyng^t theym that shal fynde faute to
correcte it, & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges,
& I shal praye god^t for them, who brynge them and me, 4
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng^t
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed^t in
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xvij day of
Iuyn, the second^t yere of kyng^t Rychar^t the thyrd^t, 8
And the yere of our lord^t MCCCC lxxxv, And enprynted^t
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord^t, & the
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth.

¶ Explicit per William Caxton.

NOTES.

- Page 1, line 12. "hye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.
- p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *lentement comun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis*.
- p. 1, l. 15. "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers*.
- p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.
- p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.
- p. 2, l. 27. The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kynge Arthur and of certeyn of his knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and emprynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyu de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.
- p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.
- p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary*.
- p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*
- p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.
- p. 19, l. 27. [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sege off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.
- p. 19, l. 31. "autentykly:" Fr. *authentiquement*.
- p. 19, l. 32. "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.
- p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion*.
- p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye:" Fr. *pais*.
- p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte:" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *on fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he ete not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "be enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. *soies enclos en iustéce*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouuer en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm cxix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same coutreye, &c.:" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constantynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a ays la cite tous les ans on deust venir veoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste:" add. Fr. *adioudre*. On the word *adjust*, as representing the two Latin forms *adjustare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I haue not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babyloyn* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdone* will be found in Dr. Hausknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euyll and olde:" Fr. *comme mauuais viella-t*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdone of Babylone*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur:" in the original the same.

- p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys houre, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous otroie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. "he setted nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "*Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui vaillet*."
- p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. "of the ronnde table." An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" *barilz*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and *Introd.*, p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."
- p. 57, l. 21. "Termagaunt:" Fr. *Tahuagaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieulz*.
- p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.
- p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of *Ferumbras'* swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been *Plorance*, *Baptisin*, and *Garbain*.
- p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. "bended:" bound, banded: Fr. *bende*.
- p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" i. e. seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu tauises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. "vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. "bowed and entred:" Fr. *ploiez et entrez*.
- p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonne:" Fr. *tronconne*, i. e. broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant peece*, i. e. for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterward:" Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. þ^e Swerde & y^e bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancren Riwe*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleið* mid sweordes." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *resioyr*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. "beyngt nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xijj."
- p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "terrestre."
- p. 71, l. 21. "Longyus." On the *legend of Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. "for hys glorious medytacyon." In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. "Neuertheles:" Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. "soo coueytous in smytyng:" Fr. *conuoiteux et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" i. e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vtterauce:" a *oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.
 p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.
 p. 74, l. 5. "vylete:" Fr. *ville*.
 p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.
 p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frusshed euyl:" Fr. *cassa et rompi mallement*.
 p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is *Ferumbras*.
 p. 78, l. 16. "enforced:" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—
 "pan Firumbras *enforcede* hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
 p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—

"*falsarz an feperd dart*."

The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.

- p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. *crapaulx*, a toad.
 p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinum fructus eius A.*)."
Apple was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodoens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.
 p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de trais*."
 p. 81, l. 28. "faus dartes." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
 p. 82, l. 6. "it is good to wete:" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre*.
 p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before *makyng* makes the sentence rather awkward.
 p. 82, l. 27. "Amanedys:" Fr. *Amandis*.
 p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
 p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984:
 "at aualyng of an hulle."
 p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
 p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.
 p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyn." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.
 p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.

"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght:" Fr. *damoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yeman:" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brullant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soubmis a faulx fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make": Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrre:" Fr. *faicte dune fae*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke:" Fr. *eult enue les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyschoneste:" Fr. *inhonnestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" i. e. on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayns:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute:" i. e. very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre fro to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuylt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she
 "a rope to hem lete down gooñ
 That aboveñ was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i. e. an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*

daurenture quelque, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

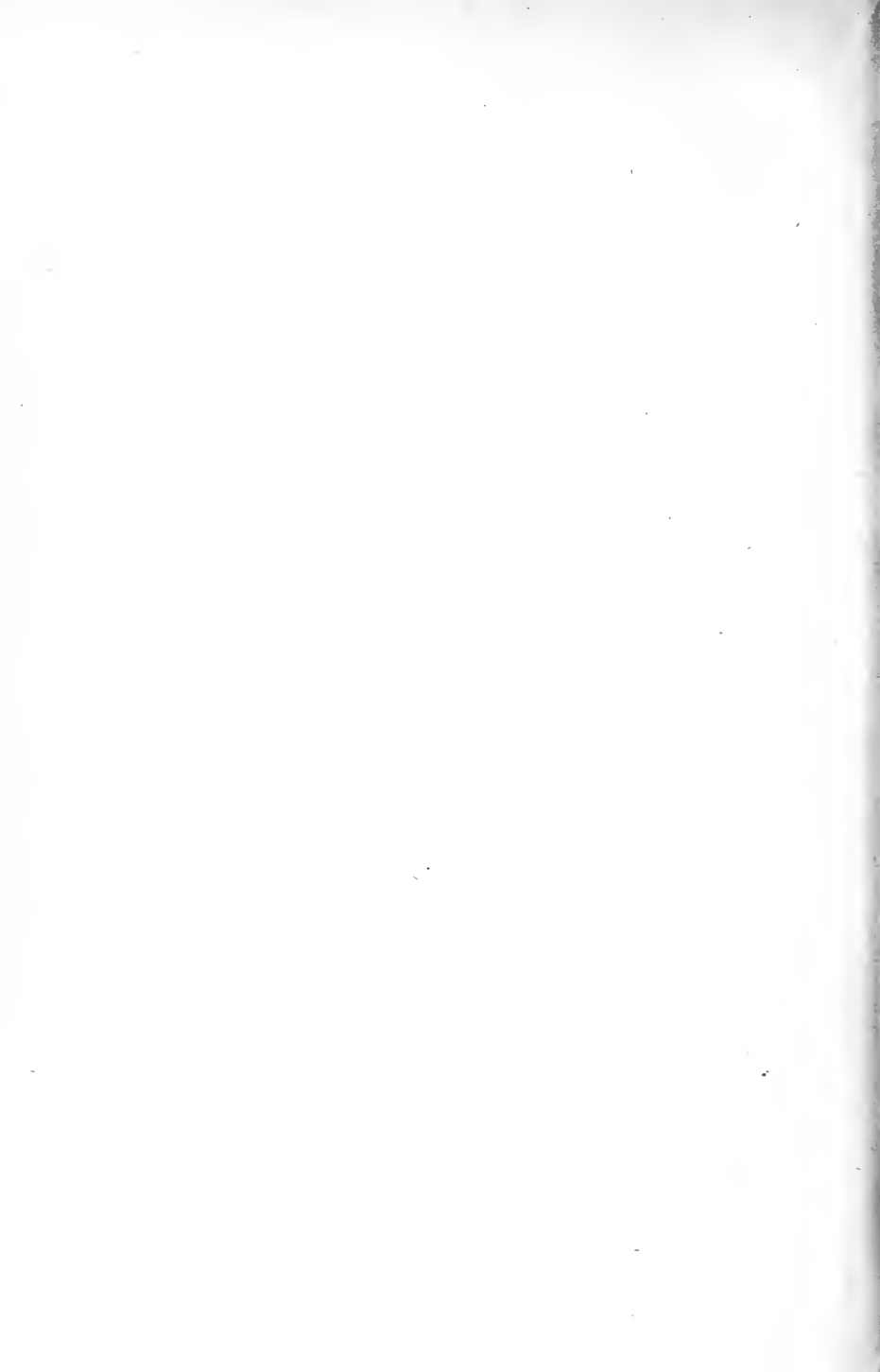
- p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubte:" Fr. *en aultre doubte*, i. e. fear.
- p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.
- p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar:" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.
- p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. *dommaige*.
- p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.
- p. 97, l. 6. "deteyned:" Fr. *detenu*.
- p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.
- p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.
- p. 99, l. 7. "lese:" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.
- p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.
- p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.
- p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.
- p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantrible, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."
- p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."
- p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland: the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.
- p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:
- "He sittes his duspers Imange,
With white berde large and lange
Faire of flesche & felle.
With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kynge pat es so strange,
His doghety men imelle."
- p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed:" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.
- p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.
- p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite musier en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. *na plus cure de ioeur.*
- p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. *trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. "Marpyn:" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Maubyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be:" Fr. *son espoux advenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. "doubted:" feared. Fr. *redoubte.*
- p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquartelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*
- p. 130, l. 29. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suche wyse, &c.:" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. *si hardis et desmesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. "hir loue and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete facyon:" Fr. *moreau de grant fasson.*
- p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recoure.*
- p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pleust de la venir baisier, en disant que selle viuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere ladmiral seroit vne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. "at vtterance:" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. *ne vous esmaies eneore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. *beuraige*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. *car ilz veoient a terre ruer les murailles principales du chasteau.*

- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the *Sowdone Balan* smashes Mahound.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the frenshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. *les francoys nous veulent faire refrodier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynymys must re-torne:" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandonned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volunteered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *ung iour entre les aultres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aduenture*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. *lataint du trauers du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant ladmiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngas; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautefeuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyned:" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a theef attaynt:" Fr. *comme larron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreaunte, &c.:" Fr. *reclame recreant et tenu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le menton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurcy*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confanon:" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui auoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon:" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doynge:" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbras*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. *il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abused:" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "*Abuser*. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. *S'abuser*. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyng Coldroe tempested hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le viel roy Coldroe, tempeste, et brullant de mommiere: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysed:" Fr. *quil soit desensle(?)*.
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Duc Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripas first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enraige de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyng:" Fr. *par presumacion* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que faire*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. *grant abusyon*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.:" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusyon en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al rauysshed:" Fr. *tout rauy*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "ouerthrew to the erthe:" Fr. *vont tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he founded, rented, and releued many and dyuers chyrches:" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not leue herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se vouldt tenir a cecy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. *fist aulcunes experientacions*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *eulx qui estoient presens et leurs successeurs fussent francs et liberez, les taillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent condicionez*.

- p. 215, l. 35. "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de escoc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. "demaunded synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. "surprysed:" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. "dystourneð:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourba*.
- p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.
- p. 242, l. 6. "to-faishshed and broken:" Fr. *il estoit naure, casse, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. "daubeny." See *Introduction*, p. 7.



G L O S S A R Y.

- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.
 Abuse, *v.* 206/19, deceive.
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.
 Accomplysshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
 Acoward, *v.* 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
 Adiouste, *v.* 39/9, to add, append.
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.
 Affectuously, *adv.* 13/12, affectionately, with affection.
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49/20, praised.
 Ampull, *s.* 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
 And, *conj.* 101/15, if.
 Anenst, *prep.* 246/29, towards, as regards.
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76/28, reached to, touched.
 Arbalastre, *s.* 104/12, a cross-bow.
 Aresonne, *pa. par.* 52/20, questioned.
 Attayned, *pt. s.* 190/19, reached, struck.
 Attones, *adv.* 56/14, at once, at the same time.
 Auale, *pt. s.* 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/34, let down, lowered.
 Bacynet, *s.* 32/15, a small helmet.
 Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.
 Baston, *s.* 182/4, a staff.
 Batayl, *s.* 232/35, a battalion, a division of an army.
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89/20, bathed, plunged.
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95/20, baths.
 Becke, *s.* 20/30, a beak, bill.
 Behoeful, *v.* 145/25, advisable, advantageous.
 Belfraye, *s.* 175/7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82/1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeyld.
 Bowedrautz, *s.* 189/31, a bowshot.
 Boystous, *a.* 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.
 Broched, *pt. s.* 101/35, spurred.
 Buscage, *s.* 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.
 Camuse, *a.* 94/27, short, thick-nosed.
 Chauffed, *pa. par.* 95/20, warmed, heated.
 Complyces, *s. pl.* 164/33, accomplices.
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24/34, confiscated.
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19/32, suitably, fittingly.
 Corobere, *v.* 24/9, to strengthen.
 Crapauld, *s.* 79/20, a toad.

Creneur, *s.* 46/19, dread.

"*Creneur*, feare, dread." —
Cotgrave.

Cresme, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. Creme.

Dedyek, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.

Delyuer, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern *clever*.

Depesshe, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten, hurry.

Derked, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.

Descerkled, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.

Descouerd, *pa. par.* 75/26, uncovered, deprived.

Desmaylled, *pa. par.* 69/10, deprived of the mails or plates.

Disreng, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.

Dyshoneste, *s.* 91/31, filth, nastiness.

Dyssymyled, *pa. par.* 13/22, disguised.

Dystourned, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned aside.

Dystrouble, *v.* 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.

Egal, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.

Empesshed, *pa. par.* 219/14, hindered, obstructed.

Enforced, *pt. s.* 78/16, exerted.

Engyne, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.

Enhardyed, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encouraged, took courage.

Ensyeuyng, *v.* 250/24, following.

Enterbrace, *pt. pl.* 113/25, embraced.

Enterprenour, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser, actor.

Entretene, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave towards.

Entyer, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.

Entyere, *pa. par.* 244/27, interred.

Entyerly, *adv.* 149/28, earnestly, very greatly. "Entyryly: *in time*." — *Cathol. Anglicum*.

Escrye, *v.* 77/27, to call upon, invoke.

Faus, *a.* 79/18. See note.

Faysyble, *a.* 49/34, possible to be done, feasible.

Felounye, *s.* 109/30, daring, recklessness.

Fere, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.

Ferfully, *adv.* 193/32, in fear, timidly.

Fette, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.

Fliese, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.

Florysshe, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.

Florysshed, *pa. par.* 108/23, flowing, long and wide.

Formosyte, *s.* 198/10, beauty.

Frequented, *pt. s.* 29/12, made frequent use of.

Geayler, *s.* 89/1, jailer.

Glaues, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.

Gree, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.

Greued, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, injured.

Guarysshed, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured, healed.

Habyll, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.

Harnoy, *s.* 105/34, equipments, outfit.

Houyng, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.

Iape, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.

Ionques, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s.* v. Ionkett.

Journeye, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.

Lawhe, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.

Lawhyng, *a.* 90/15, laughing.

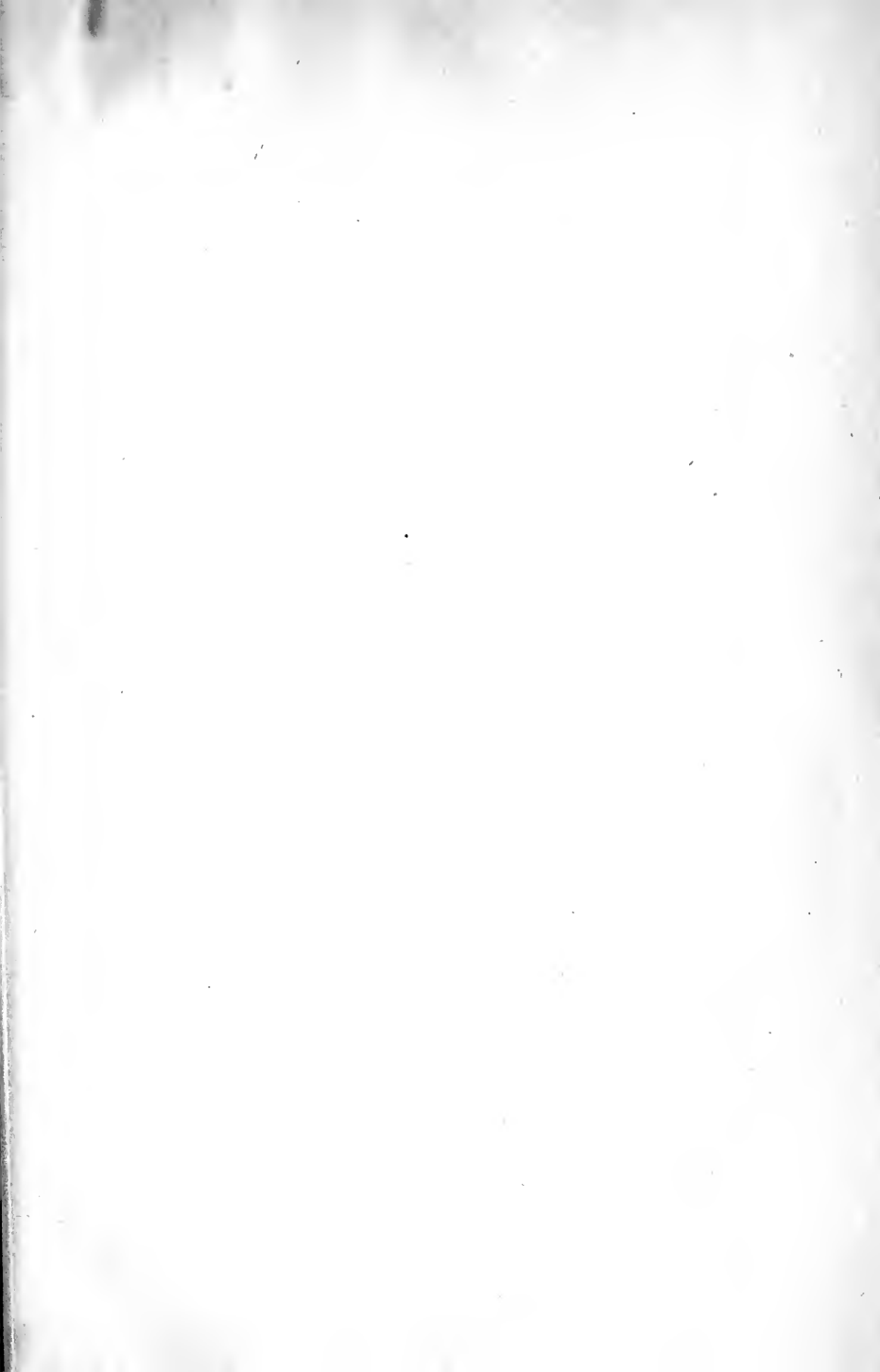
Lesynges, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.

Leteth, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes. *Leteth the wete* = tells you, sends notice to you.

Lette, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed, hindered.

- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
- Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
- Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
- Lycles, *s. pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
- Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
- Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
- Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferumbras*.
- Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
- Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
- Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
- Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
- Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
- Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
- Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
- Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
- Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.
"Ouer alle; *passim*, *vbicunque*, *genus loquendi est vbique*."—*Cath. Anglicum*.
- Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.
- Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.
- Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 2603.
- Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
- Pried, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
- Purchased, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
- Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
- Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
- Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
- Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
- Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
- Releued, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
- Remyssed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
- Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.
- Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
- Rescowed, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
- Retcheth, 3 *pr. s.* 22/3, cares, recks.
- Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
- Saleweð, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
- Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.
- Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.
- Sommyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
- Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
- Sperhawke, *s.* 193/32, a sparrowhawk.
- Stratched, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
- Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
- Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
- Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y° See.
- Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.
- Syeges, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
- Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.
- Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
- Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
- To-frussheð, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
- Trauaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
- Tronchoned, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
- Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Tyerce, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.</p> <p>Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.</p> <p>Vnnethe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.</p> <p>Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.</p> | <p>Wende, <i>pt. s.</i> 36/13, thought, intended.</p> <p>Wesshe, <i>pt. s.</i> 66/21, washed.</p> <p>Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyenbrowes</i>.</p> <p>Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.</p> |
|---|---|



PR
1119
E5
no.36-37

Early English Text
Society
[Publications]
Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

